Kraus'sche Kanzleiakten Oskar Sameks
Kodierrichtlinien

Laura Untner
Ingo Börner
Vanessa Hannesschläger
Isabell Langkabel
Johannes Knüchel
Andrea Ortner

Stand: August 2021

1. Zu diesem Dokument

In diesem Dokument werden die Kodierrichtlinien für TEI/XML-Dokumente beschrieben, die im Projekt *Intertextuality in the Legal Papers of Karl Kraus. A Scholarly Digital Edition* (FWF Projektnr. P 31138-G30, PI DDr.in Katharina Prager) zur Anwendung kommen.

Dieses Projekt wird vom Ludwig Boltzmann Institut für Digital History (https://geschichte.lbg.ac.at) in Zusammenarbeit mit dem Austrian Centre for Digital Humanities and Cultural Heritage (ACDH-CH) der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften (https://acdh.oeaw.ac.at) und der Wienbibliothek im Rathaus (https://www.wienbibliothek.at) umgesetzt. Ziel des Projekts ist es, eine digitale Edition der Kanzleiakten aus der Kanzlei Oskar Samek zu erstellen, welche die Fälle dokumentieren, in die Karl Kraus involviert war. Diese digitale Edition soll es ihren Nutzer_innen ermöglichen, den unterschiedlichen intertextuellen Bezügen in diesen Akten nachzuforschen.

Als Grundlage dient dabei einerseits das Vorgängerprojekt *Karl Kraus Online* (https://www.kraus.wienbibliothek.at), andererseits die digitalisierte Fassung der Kanzleiakten in der digitalen Wienbibliothek (https://www.digital.wienbibliothek.at). Diese beiden Quellen bauen auf der von Katharina Prager erstellten Ordnung der Bestandsliste des Kraus-Archivs der Wienbibliothek im Rathaus auf und orientieren sich an den Signaturen dieser Liste. Diese Ordnungslogik wird auch im vorliegenden Projekt als Ausgangsbasis übernommen. Ebenfalls eine wichtige Grundlage für die Editionsarbeit stellt die von Hermann Böhm erstellte, heute vergriffene Lese-Edition der Akten in vier Bänden dar (*Karl Kraus contra ...: die Prozeßakten der Kanzlei Oskar Samek in der Wiener Stadt- und Landesbibliothek, bearb. und kommentiert von Hermann Böhm, Wien, Wiener Stadt- u. Landesbibliothek, Bd. 1–4, 1995–1997*).

Im Rahmen des Projekts wird auf Basis der genannten Quellen für jedes erhaltene Einzeldokument im Archiv ein korrespondierendes TEI/XML-Dokument erstellt, in dem sich eine annotierte Transkription des Volltexts sowie alle relevanten Metadaten und Verweise auf Digitalisate des Archivdokuments befinden. Darüber hinaus wird pro Fall ein weiteres TEI/XML-Dokument angelegt, in dem die entsprechenden Metadaten festgehalten und eine Liste der zum Fall gehörigen Einzeldokumente angelegt wird. Wie genau diese TEI/XML-Dokumente entstehen und strukturiert sind, ist im Folgenden beschrieben.

2. Workflow

Der Workflow zur Erstellung eines Dokuments umfasst folgende Schritte:

- Auswahl des zu transkirbierenden Dokuments
- Transkribus: Upload, Erstellen der Transkription
- Bildzuordnung
- Erstellen des TEI Dokuments
- Bearbeiten des TEI Dokuments

3. Metadaten des TEI-Dokuments

Das Element <fileDesc> enthält die Metadaten zum elektronischen Dokument.

```
<fileDesc>
 <titleStmt>
  <title>Brief Samek an Reichspost (verantw. Red. Karl Schiffleitner)</title>
  <editor ref="#IL">Isabel Langkabel</editor>
  <respStmt>
   <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/trc">Transkription</resp>
   <name ref="#IL">Isabel Langkabel</name>
  </respStmt>
 </titleStmt>
 <publicationStmt>
  <publisher>
   <name>Austrian Centre for Digital Humanities and Cultural Heritage,
       Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften</name>
   <address>
    <street>Sonnenfelsgasse 19</street>
    <postCode>1010</postCode>
    <settlement>Wien</settlement>
    <country>Österreich</country>
   </address>
   <ref target="https://acdh.oeaw.ac.at">https://acdh.oeaw.ac.at</ref>
  </publisher>
  <publisher>
   <name>Ludwig Boltzmann Institut für Digital History</name>
   <address>
    <street>Hofburg, Batthianystiege</street>
    <postCode>1010</postCode>
    <settlement>Wien</settlement>
```

```
    <country>Österreich</country>
   </address>
   <ref target="https://geschichte.lbg.ac.at">https://geschichte.lbg.ac.at</ref>
  </publisher>
  <publisher>
   <name>Wienbibliothek im Rathaus</name>
   <address>
    <street>Friedrich-Schmidt-Platz 1</street>
    <postCode>1010</postCode>
    <country>Wien</country>
    <settlement>Österreich</settlement>
   </address>
   <ref target="https://www.wienbibliothek.at">https://www.wienbibliothek.at</ref>
  </publisher>
  <pubPlace>Wien, Österreich</pubPlace>
  <date>2021</date>
  <availability>
   <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0">Creative Commons
       Namensnennung 4.0 International Lizenz</licence>
  </availability>
  <idno type="URL" subtype="legalkraus">https://id.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus/D_000002-002-000.xml</idno>
  <idno type="URL" subtype="krausonline">http://www.kraus.wienbibliothek.at/node/1540</idno>
  <idno type="ID" subtype="transkribus">365566</idno>
 </publicationStmt>
 <seriesStmt>
  <title type="collection"
   ref="https://id.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus/C_000002">Karl Kraus ca. Reichspost</title>
 </seriesStmt>
 <sourceDesc>
  <listWit>
   <witness xml:id="D_000002-002-000-wit01"
    facs="#D_000002-002-000-facs001"/>
  </listWit>
 </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
```

3.1. Titel und Herausgeber_in

Das Element <titleStmt> in der <fileDesc> enthält den Titel des Dokuments (<title>) sowie den Namen der_des Herausgebers_in (<editor>). Die hier über das Attribut *ref* verlinkte Person ist für die digitale Version des Dokuments hauptverantwortlich.

```
<titleStmt>
 <title>Ladung zur Berufungsverhandlung (Landesgericht für Strafsachen I Wien, G. Z. 14 Bl 920/28, Josef Schaupp)</title>
 <editor ref="#IL"/>
</titleStmt>
```

3.2. Herausgebende Institutionen

Im Element <publisher> im <publicationStmt> finden sich Informationen zu den herausgebenden Institutionen des Dokuments. Im Falle des vorliegenden Projekts sind es drei Institutionen, die jeweils in einem <publisher>-Element mit entsprechenden Kindelementen (<name>, <address> (mit <street>, <postCode>, <settlement> und <country> sowie <ref>) angeführt werden.

Das Element <availability> enthält im Element <licence> einen Verweis mittels *target* auf die Creative Commons-Lizenz, unter der die Daten bereitgestellt werden.

Die <idno> Elemente geben interne und externe Identifier an. In der Regel sind drei <idno>-Elemente vorhanden. Das erste verweist mit dem *type* URL und dem *subtype* legalkraus auf die ID in der digitalen Edition. Die zweite verweist mit demselben *type* und dem *subtype* krausonline auf die ID im schon genannten Vorgängerprojekt *Karl Kraus Online* (https://www.kraus.wienbibliothek.at). Das dritte <idno>-Element ist, insofern eine Transkription des Dokuments angefertigt wurde, vom *type* ID und dem *subtype* transkribus. Dieser letzte Identifier bezieht sich auf die ID im Transkriptionsprogramm Transkribus.

```
<publicationStmt>
 <publisher>
  <name>Austrian Centre for Digital Humanities and Cultural Heritage,
     Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften</name>
  <address>
   <street>Sonnenfelsgasse 19</street>
   <postCode>1010</postCode>
   <settlement>Wien</settlement>
   <country>Österreich</country>
  </address>
  <ref target="https://acdh.oeaw.ac.at">https://acdh.oeaw.ac.at</ref>
 </publisher>
 <publisher>
  <name>Ludwig Boltzmann Institut für Digital History</name>
  <address>
   <street>Hofburg, Batthianystiege</street>
   <postCode>1010</postCode>
   <settlement>Wien</settlement>
   <country>Österreich</country>
  </address>
  <ref target="https://geschichte.lbg.ac.at">https://geschichte.lbg.ac.at</ref>
```

```
 </publisher>
 <publisher>
  <name>Wienbibliothek im Rathaus</name>
  <address>
   <street>Friedrich-Schmidt-Platz 1</street>
   <postCode>1010</postCode>
   <country>Wien</country>
   <settlement>Österreich</settlement>
  </address>
  <ref target="https://www.wienbibliothek.at">https://www.wienbibliothek.at</ref>
 </publisher>
 <pubPlace>Wien, Österreich</pubPlace>
 <date>2022</date>
 <availability>
  <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0">Creative Commons Namensnennung 4.0 International Lizenz</licence>
 </availability>
 <idno type="URL" subtype="legalkraus">https://id.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus/D_000125-006-000.xml</idno>
 <idno type="URL" subtype="krausonline">http://www.kraus.wienbibliothek.at/node/3371</idno>
 <idno type="ID" subtype="transkribus">251313</idno>
</publicationStmt>
```

3.3. Verknüpfung mit dem Fall

Im Element <title> vom *type* collection im <seriesStmt> findet sich die Information zu dem Fallkomplex, dem das Dokument angehört. Das Attribut *ref* verweist dabei auf das entsprechende Falldokument in der digitalen Edition.

```
<seriesStmt>
 <title type="collection"
  ref="https://id.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus/C_000002">Karl Kraus ca. Reichspost</title>
</seriesStmt>
```

3.4. Status des Dokuments, Arbeitsstand

Der Status der Bearbeitung des gesamten Dokuments wird in der <revisionDesc> im Attribut *status* notiert. Ist das Dokument noch in Bearbeitung, hat *status* den Wert draft. Sind alle Arbeitsschritte für das Dokument abgeschlossen, hat *status* den Wert done.

Allgemeiner ausgedrückt umfassen die Arbeitsschritte, die in <change>-Elementen notiert werden, die Bearbeitung des TEI-Headers sowie der Faksimiles (*type* header_facsimile), die strukturelle Auszeichnung (*type* structure), die Vergabe von Referenzen (*type* references), die Annotation typographischer Besonderheiten (*type* typography), die Kennzeichnung von Intertexten (*type* intertexts) und Korrekturvorgänge (*type* corrections).

Jedes <change>-Element wird nicht nur näher im Hinblick auf den Arbeitsschritt mittels des *type*-Attributs bestimmt, sondern erhält auch ein *when-iso*-Attribut mit der Angabe des Datums der Fertigstellung des Arbeitsschrittes sowie ein *who*-Attribut, das auf die Person verweist, welche diesen Arbeitsschritt durchgeführt hat.

```
<!-- LU: wäre eine Überlegung wert, changes von Ingo im Sinne der Vereinheitlichung noch zu typisieren --><revisionDesc status="draft">
 <change type="intertexts"
  when-iso="2021-03-17" who="#JK"/>
 <change type="typography"
  when-iso="2021-03-17" who="#JK"/>
 <change type="references"
  when-iso="2021-03-17" who="#JK"/>
 <change type="structure"
  when-iso="2021-03-17" who="#JK"/>
 <change when-iso="2020-07-21T12:53:42.834Z"
  who="#IB">created by API</change>
 <change when-iso="2020-10-01T12:09:09.817Z"
  who="#IB">Replaced Text with Transcription of Transkribus Document 292191.</change>
</revisionDesc>
```

4. Metadaten zum historischen Dokument

Ebenfalls im <teiHeader> werden Metadaten zum historischen Dokument hinterlegt.

4.1. Quelle, Textzeugen, Beilagen

Informationen zur Quelle finden sich im Element <sourceDesc>. Im Kindelement <listWit> wird der Textzeuge bzw. werden die Textzeugen in einem oder mehreren <witness>-Elemente(n) mit einer *xml:id* sowie einer Verlinkung auf das entsprechende Faksimile in *facs* angegeben.

Stempel werden in der <sourceDesc> im Kindelement `<msDesc>` im Element <ab> mit dem Attribut *type* und dem Wert stamp notiert. Im Attribut *source* des <stamp>-Elements wird auf die Quelle des Stempels verwiesen, durch die *xml:id* wird der Stempel zudem eindeutig identifizierbar.

```
<msDesc>
 <ab type="stamp">
  <stamp xml:id="uuid_79f806a1-ab26-445f-b806-a1ab26c45fb5"
   source="#36793"/>
 </ab>
```

```
</msDesc>
```

Ist eine Beilage zu einem Dokument verhanden, wird dieses im Element <physDesc> bzw. genauer in seinem Kindelement <accMat> mit einer *xml:id* sowie gegebenenfalls mit einer Verlinkung auf das entsprechende Beilagendokument in *source* festgehalten. Im Text selbst wird die Beilage mit dem Element <ab> versehen. Dieses erhält das Attribut *type* mit dem Wert appendix sowie gegebenenfalls eine Verlinkung auf das entsprechende <accMat>-Element im Header. Ein Beispiel für die Kodierung von Beilagen im <body>:

```
<ab type="appendix"
 source="#D_000002-002-000-acc001">1 Beilage</ab>
```

Informationen zur Materialität des Dokuments sind ebenso in der <physDesc> im Kindelement <ab> mit dem *type* materiality notiert. In <objectType> wird mit dem Attribut *ref* auf die projektspezifische Taxonomie verwiesen, in der die zur Auswahl stehenden Materialitätstypen definiert sind. Als String sind ebenso eine Prosabeschreibung des Materialitätstyps sowie die entsprechende Sigle vorhanden. Sind mehrere Textzeugen überliefert, werden mehrere <objectType>-Elemente angelegt und mit *source*-Attributen versehen.

```
<sourceDesc>
 <listWit>
  <witness xml:id="D_000002-002-000-wit01"
   facs="#D_000002-002-000-facs001"/>
 </listWit>
 <msDesc>
  <ab type="stamp">
   <stamp xml:id="uuid_79f806a1-ab26-445f-b806-a1ab26c45fb5"
    source="#36793"/>
  </ab>
 </msDesc>
 <physDesc>
  <accMat xml:id="D_000002-002-000-acc001"
   source="#D_000002-002-001">1 Beilage</accMat>
  <ab type="materiality">
   <objectType ref="https://vocabs.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/...">Typoskript, M.T.xxx</objectType>
<!-- LU: Link und Sigle müssen noch ausgebessert werden -->
  </ab>
 </physDesc>
</sourceDesc>
```

4.2. Kontextinformationen

Im Element <profileDesc> lassen sich Kontextinformationen zum Dokument, etwa den beteiligten Personen, dem Entstehungsdatum, usw. hinterlegen.

4.2.1. Datierung

Zur Datierung (und als Grundlage für eine Sortierung) wird innerhalb von <creation> ein Datum im ISO-Format (JJJJ-MM-TT) im Attribut *when-iso* angegeben. Ist ein Dokument nicht eindeutig datierbar, so wird das Datum mit *notBefore-iso* und / oder *notAfter-iso* eingeschränkt. Für die Sortierung wird *sortDate* hinzugefügt. Wenn eine Datierung nicht möglich ist, ist weder *sortDate* noch ein ISO-Wert vorhanden. Zur weiteren Klassifizierung des Datums wird *subtype* eingeführt. Zur Auswahl stehen die Werte produced (Datum der Entstehung) und received (Datum des Empfangens). Der String entspricht einem normalisierten Datum im Format TT.MM.JJJJ.

```
<creation>
 <date type="sortDate" subtype="received"
  when-iso="1922-11-30">30.11.1922</date>
</creation>
```

4.2.2. Sprache

In <langUsage> wird die Sprache des Dokuments festgehalten. In <language> wird dem Attribut *ident* ein Wert zugeordnet, z. B. ger für ein deutschsprachiges Dokument.

```
<langUsage>
 <language ident="ger">Deutsch</language>
</langUsage>
```

4.2.3. Klassifizierung des Dokuments

Auf der Dokumentebene wird in <textClass> der Dokumenttyp definiert. Im Kindelement <keywords> mit dem passenden <term> ist eine Prosabezeichnung des Dokumenttyps zu finden. Im Kindelement <classCode> mit dem Attribut *scheme*, welches auf den entsprechenden Datensatz in der projektspezifischen Taxonomie verweist, ist als String die Sigle für den Datensatz zu finden. Grundsätzlich sind mehrere Dokumenttypen – im Gegensatz zu den singulären Materialitätstypen (siehe sourceDesc) – bei einem Dokument möglich. Sind mehrere Textzeugen vorhanden, so wird <term> und <classCode> das Attribut *source* hinzugefügt, das auf den entsprechenden Textzeugen verweist.

```
<textClass>
 <keywords>
  <term source="#D_000002-002-000-wit01">Brief</term>
  <term source="#D_000002-002-000-wit02">Brief</term>
 </keywords>
 <classCode scheme="https://vocabs.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus-doctypes/v1.0/"
  source="#D_000002-002-000-wit01">D.K.BRF</classCode>
```

```
 <classCode scheme="https://vocabs.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus-doctypes/v1.0/"
  source="#D_000002-002-000-wit02">D.K.BRF</classCode>
</textClass>
```

4.2.4. Beteiligte Personen und Institutionen

In der <particDesc> werden beteiligte Personen und Institutionen (im Unterschied zu rein namentlich genannten) in ihrer Rolle (*role*) verzeichnet. Im Element <listPerson> und den ensprechenden Kindelementen <person> werden beteiligte Personen festgehalten. Jedes <person>-Element erhält dabei ein Attribut *role* mit einem Verweis auf die Rolle der Person in diesem Dokument. Der Wert von *role* entspricht einer projektspezifischen Taxonomie. Jede Person erhält außerdem einen Verweis auf den ensprechenden Datensatz in der PMB mittels eines *ref*-Attributs sowie ein Kindelement mit dem Namen der Person, <persName>. Analog funktioniert die Dokumentation der beteiligten Institutionen: Im Element <listOrg> werden <org>-Elemente mit dem Kindelement <orgName> sowie den Attributen *role* und *ref* angegeben.

```
<particDesc>
 <listPerson>
  <person role="https://vocabs.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus-roles/v1.0/plaintiff"
   ref="#11988">
   <persName>Karl Kraus</persName>
  </person>
  <person role="https://vocabs.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus-roles/v1.0/defendant"
   ref="#40703">
   <persName>Karl Schiffleitner</persName>
  </person>
 </listPerson>
 <listOrg>
  <org role="https://vocabs.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus-roles/v1.0/defendant"
   ref="#29637">
   <orgName>Reichspost</orgName>
  </org>
 </listOrg>
</particDesc>
```

4.2.5. Metadaten zu Korrespondenzstücken

Metadaten zu Korrespondenzstücken werden in der <correspDesc> versammelt. Bei Dokumenten, die keine Korrespondenzstücke ausmachen, fehlt dieser Abschnitt. Es gibt drei Möglichkeiten für die Struktur der <correspDesc>: Erstens ist sowohl der_die Absender_in als auch der_die Empfänger_in eine Person. Zweitens ist der_die Absender_in eine Person, der_die Empfänger_in eine Institution. Drittens ist der_die Absender_in eine Institution, der_die Empfänger_in eine Person. Entsprechend kommen die Elemente <persName> bzw. <orgName> zum Einsatz.

Die Namen werden dem Original entnommen. Zeilenfälle werden mit einem senkrechten Strich (|) notiert. Die 'Rolle', z. B. Rechtsanwalt, wird gegebenenfalls ebenso angebeben.

Der_Die Absender_in wird in <correspAction> mit dem Attribut *type* und dem Attributwert sent festgehalten. Der_Die Empfänger_n hingegen ist in <correspAction> *type* received zu finden. Die Rollen der Personen und Institutionen, die sich aus der projektspezifischen Taxonomie ergeben, werden in <roleName> angegeben und mittels *ref* mit der entsprechenden Klassifikation in der Taxonomie verknüpft.

In <address> werden die Anschriften dokumentiert. <street> verweist auf einen Eintrag in der PMB und <settlement> ebenso. Das Datum wird sowohl im ISO-Format in *date* als auch originalgetreu im entsprechenden String wiedergegeben.

In <noteGrp> sind optional weitere Metadaten zur Korrespondenz enthalten. Mittels <note> und entsprechenden *type*-Attributen kann ein Betreff (subject) und eine Diktatsigle (dictation) verzeichnet werden.

```
<correspDesc>
 <correspAction type="sent">
  <persName ref="#11988">Karl Kraus</persName>
  <roleName ref="https://vocabs.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus-roles/v1.0/defendant"/>
<!-- LU: korrigieren -->
  <address ana="#address">
   <street ref="#50496">Hintere Zollamtsstrasse Nr.3</street>
   <settlement ref="#53">Wien III.</settlement>
  </address>
  <date when-iso="1931-01-15"/>
 </correspAction>
 <correspAction type="received">
  <orgName ref="#50491">Strafbezirksgericht I</orgName>
  <roleName ref="https://vocabs.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus-roles/v1.0/plaintiff"/>
<!-- LU: korrigieren -->
  <address ana="#address">
   <street ref="#50664"/>
   <settlement ref="#53">Wien</settlement>
  </address>
  <date when-iso="1931-01-16">16. JAN. 1931</date>
 </correspAction>
 <noteGrp>
  <note type="subject">Privatanklage</note>
  <note type="dictation"/>
 </noteGrp>
</correspDesc>
```

4.2.6. Schreiberhände

Schreiberhände werden im Header innerhalb des Elements <handNotes> definiert. Sind keine <handNotes> angelegt, handelt es sich standardmäßig um Typoskripte.

Jede Schreiberhand wird in einem <handNote>-Element festgehalten. Dieses enhält eine *xml:id*, einen Hinweis auf das Schreibmedium (Bleistift, Tinte ...) in *medium* sowie gegebenenfalls eine Verlinkung mit der schreibenden Person in *scribeRef*, dem entsprechenden Textzeugen in *source*, einer Angabe zur Sicherheit der Aussage in *cert* und eine Zuschreibung der Verantwortlichkeit für die Definition der Hand in *resp*.

```
<handNotes>
 <handNote xml:id="D_000001-001-000-hand01"
  source="#D_000001-001-000-wit01" scribeRef="#38909" medium="black-ink"
  cert="high" resp="#IL"/>
</handNotes>
```

5. Bilddaten

Die der digitalen Edition zugrundeliegenden Faksimiles sind in <facsimile> zu finden. Innerhalb von <facsimile> ist mindestens eine <surfaceGrp> enthalten. Diese beschreibt ein Blatt. Dieses Blatt kann in mehrere <surface>-Elemente unterteilt werden. Diese machen die Seiten aus, die mittels *type* und recto bzw. verso (Vorder-/ Rückseite) noch näher bestimmt werden. Diese <surface>-Elemente beinhalten wiederum ein bis drei <graphic>-Elemente, die mittels *source* und entsprechenden Attributwerten unterschieden werden. Liegt ein Doppelblatt vor, so wird die Gruppierung der Faksimiles entsprechend angepasst.

Die Faksimiles des Vorläuferprojekts "Karl Kraus Online" werden mit dem Attributwert krausonline versehen, jene der Wienbibliothek im Rathaus mit wienbibliothek und jene der projekteigenen Scans mit scans. Sowohl <facsimile> als auch <surfaceGrp> und <surface> erhalten eine *xml:id* zur eindeutigen Identifizierung. Derzeit sind die Faksimiles nur für den 'Haupttextzeugen' zugeordnet. Insofern weitere Textzeugen vorhanden und verlinkt sind, werden diese in einem weiteren <facsimile>-Element mit dem Attribut *type* und dem Wert further-witnesses zur vorläufigen Differenzierung versehen.

```
<facsimile xml:id="D_000002-002-000-facs001">
 <surfaceGrp xml:id="D_000002-002-000-facs001-l001">
  <surface xml:id="D_000002-002-000-facs001-l001-p001"
   type="recto">
   <graphic url="http://www.kraus.wienbibliothek.at/sites/biographeme.com/files/images/object/00000019.jpg"
    source="krausonline"/>
   <graphic url="ZPH_1545-1/001_010/00000019.jpg"
    source="scans"/>
   <graphic url="https://www.digital.wienbibliothek.at/wbrobv02/i3f/v21/2540028/full/full/0/default.jpg"
    source="wienbibliothek" ana="status:checked"/>
  </surface>
  <surface xml:id="D_000002-002-000-facs001-l001-p002"
   type="recto">
   <graphic url="http://www.kraus.wienbibliothek.at/sites/biographeme.com/files/images/object/00000021.jpg"
    source="krausonline"/>
   <graphic url="ZPH_1545-1/001_010/00000021.jpg"
    source="scans"/>
   <graphic url="https://www.digital.wienbibliothek.at/wbrobv02/i3f/v21/2540030/full/full/0/default.jpg"
    source="wienbibliothek" ana="status:checked"/>
  </surface>
 </surfaceGrp>
</facsimile>
```

6. Transkription des Dokuments

Die Transkription erfolgt im Element <body> des Elements <text>.

6.1. Editorische Einrichtungsfragen

Folgende Prinzipien wurden bei der Erstellung der Transkriptionen mit Transkribus berücksichtigt:

Spatien zwischen Abkürzungen, ‘Z.A.’ oder ‘Z. A.’, ‘St.P.O.’, ‘P.A.’, ‘Urh.Ges.’ etc., ‘Art. IX’ oder ‘Art.IX’, bei Datumsangaben, Komposita wie ‘Kronos-Verlag’ (‘Kronos - Verlag’) werden grundsätzlich nicht gesetzt.

Paginierungen im Typoskript werden nicht transkribiert.

Der Umgang mit Aktenzeichen, tabeller. Darstellung, muss mit einem Editionsbeispiel geklärt und auch mit dem Staatsarchiv geklärt werden, 35.13. 4. Seite - Check Formatierung Tabelle / Zeilen

Vorgefertigte Briefköpfe (Adressen etc.) werden erst einmal nicht zeilengetreu transkribiert bzw. nicht wiedergegeben; Durchsuchbarkeit durch Angabe im TEI-Header möglich

Interpunktion erfolgt zunächst streng nach Typoskript (selbst wenn dort eine Struktur erkennbar ist, die nicht konsequent eingehalten wird [etwa bei Aufzählungen etc.]) und wird nicht korrigiert, Bsp: 27.5, S. 4: Dr. Josef Szekely Wien, IX. Canisiusgasse 8 (Stunde)

Falsche Apostrophierung wird ebenfalls nicht korrigiert: Bsp. Ely’s in Elys -> Tippfehler werden allerdings korrigiert, ebenso Anführungszeichen nach typographischen Regeln übernommen (öffnende und schließende sowie normale und einfache entsprechend angleichen), hingegen wird Grammatik/Rechtschreibung übernommen, aber Durchsuchbarkeit sollte stets gewährleistet bleiben

Bei Hochstellung von Zahlen und Buchstaben wird verzichtet: bspw. Hochstellung bei Dr wird immer mit Dr. wiedergeben, bei Uhrzeiten ebenfalls auf Hochstellung verzichten

Abkürzungen in hs. Protokollen werden aufgelöst: bspw. Zge -> Zeuge

Problem bei Korrektur der Rechtschreibung: nach zeitgenössischen Rechtschreibregeln -> wahrscheinlich brauchen wir einfach klare Regeln, wann man in Rechtschreibung u. Interpunktion eingreift, ansonsten greift man in Sprachgebrauch zu sehr ein oder man erstellt künstliche Texte, die es gar nicht gibt: Angenommenes Beispiel: Kraus beruft sich in einem Anschreiben auf fehlerhafte Schreibweise und gründet seine Thesen darauf, an der Stelle dürfte man natürlich nicht die fehlerhafte Schreibweise korrigieren, das Problem ist dann aber, dass wir dies konsequent tun, damit die Lesbarkeit bzw. Recherche nicht beeinträchtigt ist -> inkonsequente Vorgehensweise durch vernünftige Regeln möglichst vermeiden: sollte man bspw. den Rechtschreibfehler „dass“ nicht korrigieren, da an der Stelle eigentlich ein Relativsatz gemeint ist und kein konsekutiver oder „einer strengerer Behandlung unterliegen würde“ nicht in „einer strengeren Behandlung unterliegen würde“? Hier handelt es sich ja nicht um Tippfehler

Unterführungszeichen " werden aufgelöst, da wir Texte nicht standgenau wiedergeben

Bei Darstellung „Beschwerde …… S 4.–“ werden Punkte ebenfalls weggelassen

Datumsangaben bei Durchschlägen wie bspw. 11. November 7 sollten nicht unvollständig, also mimetisch, wiedergegeben, sondern vollständig, 11. November 1927 (nach dem wahrscheinlich nicht mehr vorhandenen Original), angegeben werden; in Edition als Hinzufügung wiedergeben?

Wie werden Dokumente mit Tabellen dargestellt? Bsp: 31.15: nicht tabellarisch, siehe 134.71: wieviele tabell. Dok. gibt es? Wiedergabe überlegen

Bei Verwendung von J anstelle des I wird der Buchstabe entsprechend angeglichen, Bsp.: Jch in Ich, ein entsprechender Hinweis und erläuternder Kommentar sollte aber im Header erfolgen. Interessanterweise tritt diese Schreibweise v.a. bei Botho Laserstein auf, der offenbar für Schriftfragen sensibilisiert zu sein schien. So benutzte Laserstein u.a. eine Schreibmaschine, die keine Monospace, sondern Schwabacher Schrift verwendete, zudem setzte er in seinen Briefen Kustoden, die eigentlich primär für den Buchdruck vorgesehen waren. Diese wenigen Merkmale weisen darauf hin, dass Laserstein auf die Lesbarkeit seiner Briefe achtete. Unter Umständen ist so auch die eigentümliche J-Schreibung zu erklären: In der Monospace ähnelt das Versal-I dem Minuskel-L; durch die J-Schreibung, die in Handschriften noch durchaus üblich war, da in der Kurrentschrift das versale J und versale I kaum zu unterscheiden waren sowie bis in das 17./18. Jahrhundert die Buchstaben äquivalent verwendet wurden, konnte deutlich zwischen Versal-I und dem kleinen l differenziert werden.

Sehr geehrter Herr Kollege ! wird zu Sehr geehrter Herr Kollege! Abstand wird nicht übernommen.

Deckblätter bei Anträgen, Urteilen etc. werden stets ediert

falsche Schreibweise von Eigennamen bleibt erhalten, wenn es sich um keine Tippfehler handelt bzw. nur bei eindeutigen Tippfehlern wie Buchstabendrehern wird in den Text eingegriffen

Stempel werden in Transkribus mit eigener Textregion (tag mit element stamp) erfasst: d.h. sie werden nicht transkribiert bzw. wichtige Informationen wie Eingangsdatum im Header erfasst; Stempel werden aber ausgeschnitten, so dass jede Stempelart der Akten einsehbar ist. Arbeit könnte von den nächsten Praktikantinnen übernommen werden?

auch Beschreibungen wie Blatt 2 werden. nicht gesetzt, weil Paginierungen nicht ediert werden

Umgang mit zweispaltigen Satz? Bsp.: 70.3, besonders schwierig: 70.5 mit: news-eye können mehrere Spalten mit Text aufgezogen werden

Kustoden werden im Header kommentiert bzw. erläutert, nicht aber in der Transkription aufgenommen

Umgang mit zwei Fassungen einer Seite in einem Schriftsatz, Bsp.: 68.62, Seite 8 und Seite 9 (einmal mit handschriftlichen Korrekturen, einmal ohne) – funktioniert das hier mit Editionsrichtlinien Punkt 5 (Varianten aus Vorstufen mitgeteilt): an der betreffenden Stelle ist die Grundlage die späte Fassung; aufgenommen wird aber auch die frühe Fassung mit den Änderungen, die als Streichungen und Hinzufügungen dargestellt werden; schließlich wird es so für die betreffenden Zeilen zwei mögliche Versionen geben: den Entwurf als frühe Fassung und die Umsetzung des Entwurfs als späte Fassung; diese Lösung scheint besser als etwa die Darstellung der frühen Fassung in einem Variantenapparat, da so die Änderungen besser nachvollziehbar sind.

6.2. Textstruktur

Trennstriche usw. werden nicht kodiert, stattdessen werden, wenn möglich, Struktureinheiten angesetzt.

6.2.1. Seitenwechsel

Seitenwechsel werden mit <pb> markiert. Sie werden außerdem durch das Attribut *n* und dem entsprechenden Attributwert (z. B. 1 für die erste Seite) ausgezeichnet. Darüber hinaus werden sie mit den Bilddaten verknüpft. Dies geschieht über das Attribut *facs* und dem entsprechenden Verweis auf das <surface>-Element. Durch das Attribut *xml:id* erhält das Element außerdem eine eindeutige ID.

```
<pb xml:id="uuid_01b00d2d-7002-4209-b425-a0a147ea957d"
 n="1"
 facs="#D_000002-002-000-facs001-l001-p001"/>
```

6.2.2. Absätze

Die größte Struktureinheit nach der Seite (<pb>) ist der Absatz: <p>. Dieser erhält eine *xml:id*.

```
<p xml:id="uuid_401e1862-85b6-4dfb-9d95-77543d6f4edf">
 <lb xml:id="uuid_d3bfe99e-be54-4a0f-bfe9-9ebe54fa0f46"/>1.) Anberaumung einer Hauptverhandlung;
<lb xml:id="uuid_bf8b41d7-0095-409d-8b41-d70095a09d1c"/>2.) Ladung des <rs type="person" ref="#51602">Beschuldigten</rs>;
<lb xml:id="uuid_2f30be6b-1ca6-45fe-b0be-6b1ca615fe7d"/>3.) Verlesung des Berichtigungsschreibens und der vorgelegten
<lb xml:id="uuid_7d4a1760-6919-42fb-8a17-60691902fb9c"/>
 <rs type="work" ref="#53857">Zeitungsnummer</rs>;

</p>
```

6.2.3. Abschnitte / Divisions: mehrere Textzeugen, unterschiedliche Dokumente unter einer Signatur und Rekonstruktionen Böhms

Sind mehrere Textzeugen eines Schriftstücks vorhanden und werden auch mehrere Textzeugen ediert (s. editorische Richtlinien), so wird nach dem 'primären' Textzeugen im <body> der weitere Textzeuge eingefügt und mit ausgezeichnet. Außerdem erhält er ein *type*-Attribut mit dem Wert wit. Verlinkt wird der Textzeuge in mit einem *source*-Attribut, das auf das entsprechende <witness>-Element bzw. das Faksimile verweist. Der Abschnitt selbst wird, ebenso wie der folgende, mit einer *xml:id* eindeutig identifizierbar gemacht.

```
<div xml:id="D_000068-044-000-wit-div-001"
 type="wit" source="#D_000068-044-000-wit01"/>
```

Sind mehrere Textzeugen eines Schriftstücks vorhanden, wird aber nur einer in seiner Gänze kodiert, kann Varianz unter Textzeugen trotzdem mittels eines Variantenapparats festgehalten werden. Dabei wird an der jeweiligen Stelle im <body> ein Apparat mit <app> eingefügt. In diesem wird in <lem> mit den Attributen *wit* (verlinkt den betroffenen Textzeugen) und *hand* (verlinkt die betroffene Schreiberhand) ein Lemma bzw. eine präferierte Lesart festgelegt. Im folgenden <rdg>, mit denselben Attributen wie bei <lem>, wird die Variante eines weiteren Textzeugen notiert.

```
<lb xml:id="uuid_55cfaeb3-0c8b-4901-8fae-b30c8b6901ee"/>Zu der Meldung, dass die Wiener

<app>
 <lem wit="#D_000002-002-000-wit01"
  hand="#D_000002-002-000-hand01">Renaissancebühne</lem>
 <rdg wit="#D_000002-002-000-wit02"
  hand="#D_000002-002-000-hand02">Bühne</rdg>
</app>
```

Wenn es zur Verwendung dieses Variantenapparats in einem Dokument kommt, muss im Header, nach <fileDesc> und vor <profileDesc>, eine <encodingDesc> eingefügt werden. Diese beinhaltet wiederum das Element <variantEncoding>. Bei diesem wird durch den Wert parallel-segmentation für *method* und den Wert internal für *location* angegeben, um welche Form des Variantenapparats es sich handelt.

```
<encodingDesc>
 <variantEncoding method="parallel-segmentation"
  location="internal"/>
</encodingDesc>
```

Wenn unterschiedliche Dokumente unter einer Signatur vorhanden sind (z. B. ein Brief und ein Protokoll), wird ebenfalls auf zurückgegriffen, hier mit dem *type* doc. Das Attribut *source* verweist gegebenenfalls auf eine weitere Signatur, die das entsprechende Schriftstück verzeichnet.

```
<div xml:id="D_000068-044-000-doc-div-001"
 type="doc" source="#D_000068-044-001"/>
```

Nicht nur für die Auszeichnung mehrerer Textzeugen und unterschiedlicher Dokumente unter einer Signatur, sondern auch für Rekonstruktionen von Dokumenten durch Hermann Böhm wird verwendet. Dies betrifft den Aktenkomplex 192, in dem einige Schriftstücke nicht ediert wurden, weil die entsprechenden Objekte fehlen. Stattdessen werden Rekonstruktionen dieser Texte von Hermann Böhm festgehalten und mit einem *type*-Attribut mit dem Wert boehm-reconstruction gekennzeichnet.

```
<div type="boehm-reconstruction">
 <p>Ersucht um Übersendung eines Werkverzeichnisses von Karl Kraus mit Anzahl der Exemplare und Preisangabe, da der Verlag Melantrich daran int
</div>
```

6.2.4. Fehlende Objekte

Ist ein Objekt nicht (mehr) vorhanden, aber dennoch mittels einer Signatur im Aktenbestand verzeichnet, so wird im entsprechenden <body> der Dokumente mit dem Hinweis "Objekt fehlt" darauf aufmerksam gemacht.

```
<body>
 <p>D_000181-001-000: Objekt fehlt.</p>
</body>
```

6.2.5. Zeilenfall

Zeilenfälle werden mit <lb> markiert. Kommt es innerhalb eines Worts zu einem Zeilenfall, so wird in der folgenden Zeile dem Element <lb> das Attribut *break* mit dem Wert no beigefügt. Insofern eine eindeutige Identifizierung von Zeilen angestrebt wird, erhält jedes <lb>-Element außerdem eine *xml:id*.

```
<lb xml:id="uuid_45105d00-1bba-4ea6-905d-001bbabea608"/>Beschuldigter: <rs type="person"
 ref="https://pmb.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/entity/51602">Josef <hi rend="spaced">Koller</hi>
</rs>, verantwortlicher Redak
<lb xml:id="uuid_588cb55f-c706-4cc9-8cb5-5fc706dcc959"
 break="no"/>teur der Zeitung „<rs type="institution" ref="37568">Der Wiener Tag</rs>”
```

6.2.6. Marginalien

Marginalien werden auf zwei Arten ausgezeichnet:

Marginalien ohne Text: Kodierung mit <metamark>, dem Attribut *function* und dem Wert marginal. Mittels *hand* wird auf die entsprechende Schreiberhand verwiesen, mittels *rend* auf die Position der Marginalie auf dem Objekt.

```
 Abschrift.<metamark function="marginal"
 hand="#D_000001-001-000-hand01" rend="marginRight"/>
```

Marginalien mit Text: Kodierung mittels <note>, dem Attribut *type* und dem Wert marginal. Mittels *hand* wird auf die entsprechende Schreiberhand verwiesen, mittels *rend* auf die Position der Marginalie auf dem Objekt.

```
 Abschrift.<note type="marginal"
 hand="#D_000001-001-000-hand01" rend="marginRight">1933</note>
```

6.3. Typografische Hervorhebungen

Grundsätzlich werden typographische Auszeichnungen mit <hi> ausgezeichnet. Je nachdem, welche Hervorhebung vorliegt, kommen unterschiedliche Werte für *rend* zum Einsatz. Handelt es sich um eine Unterstreichung, so wird der Wert underlined angegeben. Liegt eine Sperrung vor, bekommt *rend* den Wert spaced. Fette Stellen werden mit bold ausgezeichnet, kursive mit italics.

```
<hi rend="spaced">Privatanklage</hi>
```

Liegt eine handschriftliche Hervorhebung vor, so kann die entsprechende Schreiberhand im Attribut *hand* verlinkt werden.

```
<hi rend="underlined"
 hand="#D_000001-001-000-hand01">Anträge</hi>
```

6.4. Eingriffe in den Text

Semantisch relevante Sofort- und Spätkorrekturen werden auf unterschiedliche Weisen ausgezeichnet:

Einfügungen werden mit <add> ausgezeichnet. Handelt es sich um eine handschriftliche Einfügung, so wird das Attribut *hand* mit Verweis auf die entsprechende Schreiberhand ebenso verzeichnet.

```
 Ein <add hand="#D_000001-001-000-hand01">neuer</add> Antrag.
```

Tilgungen werden mit <del> ausgezeichnet. Handelt es sich um eine handschriftliche Tilgung, so wird das Attribut *hand* mit Verweis auf die entsprechende Schreiberhand ebenso verzeichnet.

```
 Ein <del hand="#D_000001-001-000-hand01">alter</del> Antrag.
```

Ersetzungen werden mit <subst> ausgezeichnet. Handelt es sich um eine handschriftliche Ersetzung, so wird das Attribut *hand* mit Verweis auf die entsprechende Schreiberhand ebenso verzeichnet.

```
 Ein <subst hand="#D_000001-001-000-hand01">
 <del>alter</del>
 <add>neuer</add>
</subst> Antrag.
```

Bestandteile von Umstellungen werden mit <seg> mit dem *type* transposition ausgezeichnet. Jedes <seg>-Element erhält dabei eine *xml:id*. Die Umstellung selbst wird mit dem Element <metamark> gekennzeichnet, welches das Attribut *function* mit dem Wert transposition und einer Verlinkung auf das entsprechende <seg>-Element in *target* enthält. Handelt es sich um eine handschriftliche Umstellung, so wird die entsprechende Schreiberhand mit Hilfe des Attributs *hand* angeführt.

```
<seg type="transposition"
 xml:id="D_000001-001-000_seg001">Der</seg>
<metamark function="transposition"
 hand="#D_000001-001-000-hand01" target="#D_000001-001-000_seg001"/>
<seg type="transposition"
 xml:id="D_000001-001-000_seg002">Antrag</seg>
<metamark function="transposition"
 hand="#D_000001-001-000-hand01" target="#D_000001-001-000_seg002"/>
<seg type="transposition"
 xml:id="D_000001-001-000_seg003">ist</seg>
<metamark function="transposition"
 hand="#D_000001-001-000-hand01" target="#D_000001-001-000_seg003"/>
<seg type="transposition"
```

```
 xml:id="D_000001-001-000_seg004">neu</seg>
<metamark function="transposition"
 hand="#D_000001-001-000-hand01" target="#D_000001-001-000_seg004"/>.
```

Im Header wird sodann in die <profileDesc> <listTranspose> mit der betroffenen Umstellung eingefügt. Im Element <transpose> mit einer möglichen Verlinkung auf eine Schreiberhand in *hand* befinden sich sodann <ptr>-Elemente, die mittels des Attributs *target* auf die entsprechenden <seg>-Elemente im <body> verweisen.

```
<listTranspose>
 <transpose hand="#D_000001-001-000-hand01">
  <ptr target="#D_000001-001-000_seg004"/>
  <ptr target="#D_000001-001-000_seg003"/>
  <ptr target="#D_000001-001-000_seg001"/>
  <ptr target="#D_000001-001-000_seg002"/>
 </transpose>
</listTranspose>
```

Getilgte bzw. zurückgenommene Überarbeitungen werden mit <restore> ausgezeichnet. Handelt es sich um eine handschriftliche Korrektur, so wird die entsprechende Schreiberhand über das Attribut *hand* hinzugefügt.

```
 Der Antrag ist <restore hand="#D_000001-001-000-hand01">
 <del hand="#D_000001-001-000-hand01">sehr</del>
</restore> alt.
```

Sind Korrekturen innerhalb von Korrekturen vorhanden, etwa eine Tilgung in einer Hinzufügung (<del> in <add>), so werden die Elemente entsprechend geschachtelt. Davon ausgenommen ist die nicht TEI-konforme Schachtelung von <subst> in <subst>.

```
 Der Antrag <subst hand="#D_000001-001-000-hand01">
 <del>ist alt</del>
 <add>
  <subst>
   <del> war</del>
   <add>ist</add>
  </subst> neu</add>
</subst>.
```

Leerstellen werden mit <gap> gekennzeichnet. Der Grund für die Leerstelle in der digitalen Edition wird in *reason* angegeben. Als Attributwerte stehen cancelled (abgebrochen), deleted (getilgt), editorial (aus editorischen Gründen nicht übertragen) und illegible (unleserlich) zur Auswahl. Im Attribut *extent* kann das Ausmaß der Leerstelle dokumentiert werden. Die Werte sind in diesem Fall nicht klar definiert, da beispielsweise several-characters neben three-words oder one-line vorkommen kann.

```
 Dieser Antrag <gap reason="illegible" extent="1-word"/> neu.
```

Komplexe Korrekturen werden mit Hilfe eines Pointers annotiert. Haben wir beispielsweise den Satzausschnitt "dessen Besprechung über das Kriegsmanifest" vorliegen, wobei "Besprechung über das" nachträglich durchgestrichen und mit der handschriftlichen Einfügung "Kritik an dessen Stelle" ersetzt wurde, hier aber wieder "Kritik an dessen" getilgt und die Streichung von "über das" zurückgenommen wurde, können wir den Ausschnitt wie folgt kodieren:

```
<p>dessen <subst>
  <del hand="#A" seq="1">Besprechung
  <restore xml:id="XY" hand="#A" seq="3">über
       das</restore>
  </del>
  <del hand="#A" seq="2">
   <add hand="#A" seq="1">Kritik an dem</add>
  </del>
  <add hand="#A" seq="2">Stelle</add>
 </subst>
 <ptr target="#XY" type="transposition"/> Kriegsmanifest</p>
```

Handelt es sich zwar um keine handschriftliche Korrektur, jedoch sehr wohl um eine handschriftliche Notiz, dann wird diese mit <note> und einem Verweis auf die entsprechende Schreiberhand mittels *hand* ausgezeichnet.

```
<note hand="#D_000001-001-000-hand01">Der Antrag liegt nicht vor.</note>
```

7. Annotation und semantische Erschließung

7.1. Verweise auf Entitäten

Gewisse Entitäten im <body> werden mittels <rs> und entsprechenden *type*-Attributwerten ausgezeichnet. person wird für die Verlinkung von Personen herangezogen, institution für jene von Institutionen. Orte werden mit place kodiert, Werke mit work und Gesetzestexte mit law. Bei <rs> mit dem *type* work gibt es ferner Untergruppen in Form von *subtype* mit den möglichen Werten pmb (für 'Werke' in der PMB), fackel (für 'Werke' aus der "Fackel") und legal-doc (für 'Werke', die sich im Korpus der Rechtsakten-Edition befinden). Adressen erhalten sowohl place als auch *ana* mit dem Wert #address. Schachtelungen von <rs> sind möglich.

```
<rs type="work" ref="#53851">Der Wiener Tag</rs>
```

Durch das *ref*-Attribut wird die Entität außerdem mit dem entsprechenden Datensatz in der PMB bzw. der "Fackel", dem entsprechenden Dokument in den Rechtsakten oder ALEX verlinkt.

Personal- und Possessivpronomen werden nicht ausgezeichnet. Ausschlaggebend sind Namen bzw. Substantive. Ebenso nicht näher bestimmt werden Namen literarischer Figuren.

Im <body> selbst sind also alle erwähnten Personen und Institutionen ausgezeichnet. In die <particDesc> werden jedoch nur die zentral beteiligten übernommen.

7.2. Zitate, wörtliche Reden

Zitate werden mit <quote> ausgezeichnet, insofern sie in Anführungszeichen stehen. Diese wurden im Zuge der Transkription normalisiert. Die <quote>-Elemente erhalten eine *xml:id* sowie einen Verweis auf den Ursprung des Zitats mittels *source*.

```
„<quote xml:id="uuid_3ddbac9d-2d25-4017-a98b-44dbc216608c"
source="https://fackel.oeaw.ac.at/f/908,007">groteske Bemerkung</quote>“
```

Handelt es sich um eine wörtliche Rede, so wird das Element <q> mit dem Attribut *type* und dem Wert spoken herangezogen. Ist der_die Sprecher_in der Aussage identifizierbar, wird sie mit dem *who*-Attribut verlinkt.

```
„<q type="spoken" who="#38909">hineingebracht</q>“
```

7.3. Notizen

Das Element <note> wird nicht nur in der <correspDesc> für die Auszeichnung von Diktatsiglen und Betreffen herangezogen, sondern, wie schon erwähnt, auch für Marginalien. Darüber hinaus werden Notizen der Kanzlei Oskar Samek mit <note>, dem Attribut *type* mit dem Wert paratext und dem Attribut *resp* mit dem Wert law-firm verzeichnet.

```
<note type="paratext" resp="law-firm">Betrifft: <rs type="person" ref="#11988">Kraus</rs> – <rs type="person" ref="#11910">Kerr</rs>
 <lb xml:id="uuid_fba404e0-86b9-42fb-a404-e086b9a2fb21"/>expediert am 3. Jänner 1927.
</note>
```

8. IDs

IDs bzw. Identifier werden wie folgt vergeben:

Die Dokumente selbst erhalten eine ID in der Form D_xxxxxx-xxx-xxx.xml, wobei die erste Ziffernkombination den Fall bezeichnet (vgl. die IDs für Fälle in der Form C_xxxxx), die zweite das Dokument und die dritte gegebenenfalls eine Beilage.

```
<TEI xml:base="https://id.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus"
 xml:id="D_000112-029-000.xml"
 prev="https://id.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus/D_000112-028-000.xml"
 next="https://id.acdh.oeaw.ac.at/legalkraus/D_000112-030-000.xml" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
```

Als Attribute des Elements <TEI> werden außerdem die *xml:base*, der Namespace (*xmlns*, im Beispiel nicht vorhanden) sowie *prev* und *next* angeführt. Letztere Attribute verweisen auf das vorangehende sowie das folgende Dokument.

<witness>-Elemente, also Textzeugen, bekommen eine ID in der Form D_xxxxxx-xxx-xxx-witxx. Der ID des Dokuments wird also "witxx" hinzugefügt.

```
<witness xml:id="D_000002-002-000-wit01"
 facs="#D_000002-002-000-facs001"/>
```

Die IDs der <facsimile>-Elemente ergibt sich ebenso aus der ID des Dokuments und einem Zusatz in der Form "facsxxx". Dieser ID wird noch ein weiterer Zusatz in der Form "lxxx" für <surfaceGrp>-Elemente hinzugefügt. Für die ID eines <surface>-Elements wird die ID der <surfaceGrp> noch einmal erweitert um "pxxx".

```
<facsimile xml:id="D_000002-002-000-facs001">
 <surfaceGrp xml:id="D_000002-002-000-facs001-l001">
  <surface xml:id="D_000002-002-000-facs001-l001-p001"
   type="recto">
   <graphic url="http://www.kraus.wienbibliothek.at/sites/biographeme.com/files/images/object/00000019.jpg"
    source="krausonline"/>
   <graphic url="ZPH_1545-1/001_010/00000019.jpg"
    source="scans"/>
   <graphic url="https://www.digital.wienbibliothek.at/wbrobv02/i3f/v21/2540028/full/full/0/default.jpg"
    source="wienbibliothek" ana="status:checked"/>
  </surface>
  <surface xml:id="D_000002-002-000-facs001-l001-p002"
   type="recto">
   <graphic url="http://www.kraus.wienbibliothek.at/sites/biographeme.com/files/images/object/00000021.jpg"
    source="krausonline"/>
   <graphic url="ZPH_1545-1/001_010/00000021.jpg"
    source="scans"/>
   <graphic url="https://www.digital.wienbibliothek.at/wbrobv02/i3f/v21/2540030/full/full/0/default.jpg"
    source="wienbibliothek" ana="status:checked"/>
  </surface>
 </surfaceGrp>
</facsimile>
```

Folgende Elemente erhalten UUIDs: <p>, <pb> (zusätzlich zur Seitenzählung in *n*), <lb>, <quote> und <stamp>.

```
<p xml:id="uuid_3e3c19ee-b10e-4d0b-95fb-0ccf3db0dc3a">
 <lb xml:id="uuid_cb24b124-dde5-4621-a4b1-24dde5762193"/>In vorzüglicher Hochachtung
```

```
</p>
```

9. TEI-Modifikation

9.1. Elements

9.1.1. <TEI>

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or `<teiCorpus>`) element. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) version — specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.version **Note** Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise association provided by the *source* attribute on the associated `<schemaSpec>`.
Contained by	**textstructure:** TEI
May contain	**header:** teiHeader **textstructure:** TEI text **transcr:** facsimile
Note	This element is required. It is customary to specify the TEI namespace `http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0` on it, using the *xmlns* attribute.

Example	`<TEI version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`
	` <teiHeader>`
	`  <fileDesc>`
	`  <titleStmt>`
	`  <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>`
	`  </titleStmt>`
	`  <publicationStmt>`
	`  <p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5 version using a name space.</p>`
	`  </publicationStmt>`
	`  <sourceDesc>`
	`  <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>`
	`  </sourceDesc>`
	` </fileDesc>`
	`</teiHeader>`
	` <text>`
	`  <body>`
	`  <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>`
	`  </body>`
	` </text>`
	`</TEI>`

Example	`<TEI version="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`
	` <teiHeader>`
	`  <fileDesc>`
	`  <titleStmt>`
	`  <title>A TEI Document containing four page images </title>`
	`  </titleStmt>`
	`  <publicationStmt>`
	`  <p>Unpublished demonstration file.</p>`
	`  </publicationStmt>`
	`  <sourceDesc>`

```
    <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
   </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
 </teiHeader>
 <facsimile>
  <graphic url="page1.png"/>
  <graphic url="page2.png"/>
  <graphic url="page3.png"/>
  <graphic url="page4.png"/>
 </facsimile>
</TEI>
```

Schematron	<sch:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/> <sch:ns prefix="xs" uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/>
Schematron	<sch:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
  <alternate>
   <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.resource"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
   <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element TEI
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute version { text }?,
   ( teiHeader, ( ( model.resource+, TEI* ) | TEI+ ) )
}
```

9.1.2. <ab>

<ab> (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors]

Module	linking
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.pLike
Contained by	**core:** note q quote **corpus:** particDesc **header:** availability change correspAction correspDesc encodingDesc handNote langUsage licence publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc **msdescription:** accMat physDesc **namesdates:** org person **textcrit:** lem rdg **textstructure:** body div **transcr:** metamark
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement

	textcrit: app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	The <ab> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate markup is defined.
Example	 <ab>In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.</ab> <ab>And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.</ab> <ab>And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.</ab> <!-- ...-->
Schematron	<s:report test="not(ancestor::tei:floatingText) and (ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote | parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure)"> Abstract model violation: ab may not occur inside paragraphs or other ab elements. </s:report>
Schematron	<s:report test="(ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg) and not(parent::tei:figure or parent::tei:note or ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level divisions such as p or ab, unless ab is a child of figure or note, or is a descendant of floatingText. </s:report>
Content model	<content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content>

Schema Declaration	element ab
	{
	 att.global.attributes,
	 att.typed.attributes,
	 att.declaring.attributes,
	 att.fragmentable.attributes,
	 att.written.attributes,
	 macro.paraContent
	}

9.1.3. <accMat>

<accMat> (accompanying material) contains details of any significant additional material which may be closely associated with the manuscript or object being described, such as non-contemporaneous documents or fragments bound in with it at some earlier historical period. [10.7.3.3. Accompanying Material]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.physDescPart
Contained by	**msdescription:** physDesc
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp p pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Example	<accMat>A copy of a tax form from 1947 is included in the envelope

	with the letter. It is not catalogued separately.</accMat>
Content model	<content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content>

Schema Declaration	element accMat
	{
	att.global.attributes,
	att.typed.attributes,
	macro.specialPara
	}

9.1.4. <add>

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)) (att.written (@hand)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
Member of	model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	**analysis:** cl pc phr s w **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change handNote licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **transcr:** metamark restore subst
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the <add> element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the `<corr>` or `<supplied>` element are recommended. In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of <add> may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project.
Example	The story I am going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the consequences <add place="above">of these facts</add> from which this tale takes its title.
Content model	<content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content>
Schema Declaration	element add { att.global.attributes, att.transcriptional.attributes,

```
    att.placement.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    att.dimensions.attributes,
    macro.paraContent
}
```

9.1.5. <address>

<**address**> (address) contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.6.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s span **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode correspAction creation handNote language licence publicationStmt **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** interp interpGrp span spanGrp **core:** gap lb name note noteGrp pb postCode rs street **header:** idno **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark
Note	This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element `<addrLine>` may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc.

Example	Using just the elements defined by the core module, an address could be represented as follows:
	`<address>`
	` <street>via Marsala 24</street>`
	` <postCode>40126</postCode>`
	` <name>Bologna</name>`
	` <name>Italy</name>`
	`</address>`

Example	When a schema includes the names and dates module more specific elements such as country or settlement would be preferable over generic <name>:
	`<address>`
	` <street>via Marsala 24</street>`
	` <postCode>40126</postCode>`
	` <settlement>Bologna</settlement>`
	` <country>Italy</country>`
	`</address>`

Example	`<address>`
	` <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>`
	` <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>`
	` <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>`
	` <addrLine>USA</addrLine>`
	`</address>`

Example	`<address>`
	` <country key="FR"/>`
	` <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement>`
	` <postCode>69002</postCode>`
	` <district type="arrondissement">IIème</district>`
	` <district type="quartier">Perrache</district>`
	` <street>`
	`  <num>30</num>, Cours de Verdun</street>`
	`</address>`

Content model	<content> <sequence> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.addrPart"/> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </sequence> </content>

Schema Declaration	element address
	{
	att.global.attributes,
	(model.global*, (model.addrPart, model.global*)+)
	}

9.1.6. <app>

<app> (apparatus entry) contains one entry in a critical apparatus, with an optional lemma and usually one or more readings or notes on the relevant passage. [12.1.1. The Apparatus Entry]

Module	textcrit
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (type, @subtype) type — classifies the variation contained in this element according to some convenient typology. **Derived from:** att.typed **Status:** Optional **Datatype:** teidata.enumerated from — identifies the beginning of the lemma in the base text. **Status:** Optional **Datatype:** teidata.pointer **Note:** This attribute should be used when either the double-end point method of apparatus markup, or the location-referenced method with a URL rather than canonical reference, are used. to — identifies the endpoint of the lemma in the base text. **Status:** Optional **Datatype:** teidata.pointer **Note:** This attribute is only used when the double-end point method of apparatus markup is used, when the encoded apparatus is not embedded *in-line* in the base-text. loc — (location) indicates the location of the variation, when the location-referenced method of apparatus markup is used. **Status:** Optional **Datatype:** 1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace **Note:** This attribute is used only when the location-referenced encoding method is used. It supplies a string containing a canonical reference for the passage to which the variation applies.
Member of	model.global.edit
Contained by	**analysis:** cl m phr s span w

	core: add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName person roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **textstructure:** body div text **transcr:** metamark restore surface surfaceGrp
May contain	**core:** note noteGrp **textcrit:** lem rdg

Example	`<app>`
	` <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>`
	` <rdg wit="#La" type="substantive">Experiment</rdg>`
	` <rdg wit="#Ra2" type="substantive">Eryment</rdg>`
	`</app>`

Example	`<app type="substantive">`
	` <rdgGrp type="subvariants">`
	`  <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>`
	`  <rdg wit="#Ha4">Experiens</rdg>`
	` </rdgGrp>`
	` <rdgGrp type="subvariants">`
	`  <lem wit="#Cp #Ld1">Experiment</lem>`
	`  <rdg wit="#La">Ex<g ref="#per"/>iment</rdg>`
	` </rdgGrp>`
	` <rdgGrp type="subvariants">`
	`  <lem resp="#ed2013">Eriment</lem>`
	`  <rdg wit="#Ra2">Eryment</rdg>`
	` </rdgGrp>`
	`</app>`

Example	`<app loc="1">`
	` <rdg resp="#SEG">TIM##A</rdg>`
	`</app>`

Example	`<app loc="1-6">`
	` <note>Too badly worn to yield a text</note>`
	`</app>`

Example	`<choice xml:id="choice3">`
	` <reg>##µ#####</reg>`
	` <orig>########</orig>`
	`</choice>`
	`<!-- ... -->`
	`<app from="#choice3">`
	` <note>Mommsen's fanciful normalization, reproduced here, has not been accepted by all recent editions</note>`
	`</app>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <sequence>`
	`  <elementRef key="lem" minOccurs="0"/>`
	`  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"`
	`  minOccurs="0">`
	`  <classRef key="model.rdgLike"/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="witDetail"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="wit"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="rdgGrp"/>`
	`  </alternate>`
	` </sequence>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element app`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.typed.attribute.subtype,`
	`  attribute type { text }?,`
	`  attribute from { text }?,`
	`  attribute to { text }?,`
	`  attribute loc { list { + } }?,`
	`  ( lem?, ( model.rdgLike | model.noteLike | witDetail | wit | rdgGrp )* )`
	`}`

9.1.7. <availability>

<availability> (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module	header

Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) status (status) supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Legal values are:** **free** (free) the text is freely available. **unknown** (unknown) the status of the text is unknown. **restricted** (restricted) the text is not freely available.
Member of	model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	**header:** publicationStmt
May contain	**core:** p **header:** licence **linking:** ab
Note	A consistent format should be adopted

Example	`<availability status="restricted">`
	`<p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>`
	`</availability>`
	`<availability status="free">`
	`<p>In the public domain</p>`
	`</availability>`
	`<availability status="restricted">`
	`<p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>`
	`</availability>`

Example	`<availability>` `<licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">` `<p>The MIT License applies to this document.</p>` `<p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p>` `<p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</p>` `<p>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p>` `<p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.</p>` `</licence>` `</availability>`

Content model	`<content>`
	`<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`<classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/>`
	`<classRef key="model.pLike"/>`
	`</alternate>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element availability`
	`{`
	`att.global.attributes,`
	`att.declarable.attributes,`
	`attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,`
	`( model.availabilityPart | model.pLike )+`
	`}`

9.1.8. <body>

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls)
Contained by	**textstructure:** text
May contain	**analysis:** interp interpGrp span spanGrp **core:** gap lb note noteGrp p pb q quote **linking:** ab **namesdates:** listOrg listPerson **textcrit:** app listWit **textstructure:** div **transcr:** listTranspose metamark
Example	<body> <l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l> <l>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</l> <l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</l> <l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l> <l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l> <l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l> <l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</l> <l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l> <l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l> <trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer> </body>

Content model	<content>
	  <sequence>
	  <classRef key="model.global"
	  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  <sequence minOccurs="0">
	  <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
	  <alternate minOccurs="0"
	  maxOccurs="unbounded">
	  <classRef key="model.global"/>
	  <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
	  </alternate>
	  </sequence>
	  <sequence minOccurs="0">
	  <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
	  <alternate minOccurs="0"
	  maxOccurs="unbounded">
	  <classRef key="model.global"/>
	  <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
	  </alternate>
	  </sequence>
	  <alternate>
	  <sequence minOccurs="1"
	  maxOccurs="unbounded">
	  <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
	  <alternate minOccurs="0"
	  maxOccurs="unbounded">
	  <classRef key="model.global"/>
	  <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
	  </alternate>
	  </sequence>
	  <sequence minOccurs="1"
	  maxOccurs="unbounded">
	  <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
	  <alternate minOccurs="0"
	  maxOccurs="unbounded">
	  <classRef key="model.global"/>
	  <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
	  </alternate>
	  </sequence>
	  <sequence>
	  <sequence minOccurs="1"
	  maxOccurs="unbounded">
	  <classRef key="model.common"/>
	  <classRef key="model.global"
	  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	  </sequence>

```
    <alternate minOccurs="0">
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <classRef key="model.global"/>
       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
     </sequence>
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <classRef key="model.global"/>
       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
     </sequence>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element body
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( model.divTop, ( model.global | model.divTop )* )?,
      ( model.divGenLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )?,
      (
         ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
       | ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
       | (
            ( model.common, model.global* )+,
            (
               ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
             | ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
            )?
         )
      ),
      ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
   )
}
```

9.1.9. <c>

<c> (character) represents a character. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]	
Module	analysis
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.notated (@notation)
Member of	model.segLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl m pc phr s w **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change handNote licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	Character data only

Note	Contains a single character, a <g> element, or a sequence of graphemes to be treated as a single character. The *type* attribute is used to indicate the function of this segmentation, taking values such as letter, punctuation, or digit etc.
Example	<phr> <c>M</c> <c>O</c> <c>A</c> <c>I</c> <w>doth</w> <w>sway</w> <w>my</w> <w>life</w> </phr>
Content model	<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/> </content>

Schema Declaration	element c
	{
	att.global.attributes,
	att.segLike.attributes,
	att.typed.attributes,
	att.notated.attributes,
	macro.xtext
	}

9.1.10. <change>

<change> (change) documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.4.1. Creation 11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions]

Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.docStatus (@status) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) target (target) points to one or more elements that belong to this change. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space
Contained by	**header:** revisionDesc
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp p pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	The *who* attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <respStmt> or <person> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it. It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The *status* attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.
Example	<titleStmt> <title> ... </title> <editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor> <respStmt xml:id="BZ">

	<resp>copy editing</resp> <name>Brett Zamir</name> </respStmt> </titleStmt> <!-- ... --> <revisionDesc status="published"> <change who="#BZ" when="2008-02-02" status="public">Finished chapter 23</change> <change who="#BZ" when="2008-01-02" status="draft">Finished chapter 2</change> <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21" who="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</change> <change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change> </revisionDesc>
Example	<profileDesc> <creation> <listChange> <change xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</change> <change xml:id="DRAFT2" notBefore="1880-12-09">First revision, mostly using green ink</change> <change xml:id="DRAFT3" notBefore="1881-02-13">Final corrections as supplied to printer.</change> </listChange> </creation> </profileDesc>
Content model	<content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content>

Schema Declaration	element change
	{
	att.ascribed.attributes,
	att.datable.attributes,
	att.docStatus.attributes,
	att.global.attributes,
	att.typed.attributes,
	attribute target { list { + } }?,
	macro.specialPara
	}

9.1.11. <cl>

<cl> (clause) represents a grammatical clause. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]	
Module	analysis
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.notated (@notation)
Member of	model.segLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change handNote licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app

	transcr: listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of clause, taking values such as finite, nonfinite, declarative, interrogative, relative etc. as appropriate.
Example	`<cl type="relative" function="clause_modifier">Which frightened both the heroes so,<cl>They quite forgot their quarrel.</cl></cl>`
Content model	`<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/></content>`
Schema Declaration	`element cl { att.global.attributes, att.segLike.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.notated.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }`

9.1.12. <classCode>

<**classCode**> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) scheme — identifies the classification system in use, as defined by, e.g. a `<taxonomy>` element, or some other resource. **Status** Required **Datatype** teidata.pointer
Contained by	**header:** textClass
May contain	**analysis:** interp interpGrp span spanGrp **core:** address date gap hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q ref rs term title **header:** idno **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark subst character data
Example	`<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>`
Content model	`<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/></content>`
Schema Declaration	`element classCode { att.global.attributes, attribute scheme { text }, macro.phraseSeq.limited }`

9.1.13. <correspAction>

<**correspAction**> (correspondence action) contains a structured description of the place, the name of a person/organization and the date related to the sending/receiving of a message or any other action related to the correspondence. [2.4.6. Correspondence Description]

Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (type, @subtype) type — describes the nature of the action. **Derived from:** att.typed **Status:** Optional **Datatype:** teidata.enumerated **Suggested values include:** **sent** — information concerning the sending or dispatch of a message. **received** — information concerning the receipt of a message. **transmitted** — information concerning the transmission of a message, i.e. between the dispatch and the next receipt, redirect or forwarding. **redirected** — information concerning the redirection of an unread message. **forwarded** — information concerning the forwarding of a message.
Member of	model.correspDescPart
Contained by	**header:** correspDesc
May contain	**core:** address date name note noteGrp p rs **header:** idno **linking:** ab **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement

Example	`<correspAction type="sent">`
	`<persName>Adelbert von Chamisso</persName>`
	`<settlement>Vertus</settlement>`
	`<date when="1807-01-29"/>`
	`</correspAction>`

Content model	`<content>`
	`<alternate>`
	`<classRef key="model.correspActionPart"`
	`minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`<classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"`
	`maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`</alternate>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element correspAction`
	`{`
	`att.global.attributes,`
	`att.typed.attribute.subtype,`
	`att.sortable.attributes,`
	`attribute type`
	`{`
	`"sent" | "received" | "transmitted" | "redirected" | "forwarded"`
	`}?,`
	`( model.correspActionPart+ | model.pLike+ )`
	`}`

9.1.14. <respDesc>

<**respDesc**> (correspondence description) contains a description of the actions related to one act of correspondence. [2.4.6. Correspondence Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.declarable (@default) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.profileDescPart
Contained by	**header:** profileDesc
May contain	**core:** note noteGrp p **header:** correspAction **linking:** ab

Example	<pre><correspDesc>
	<correspAction type="sent">
	<persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName>
	<settlement>Dresden</settlement>
	<date when="1817-06-23">23 June 1817</date>
	</correspAction>
	<correspAction type="received">
	<persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>
	<settlement>Prag</settlement>
	</correspAction>
	<correspContext>
	<ref type="prev"
	target="http://www.weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A041209">Previous letter of
	<persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName>
	to <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>:
	<date from="1817-06-19" to="1817-06-20">June 19/20, 1817</date>
	</ref>
	<ref type="next"
	target="http://www.weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A041217">Next letter of
	<persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName> to
	<persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>:
	<date when="1817-06-27">June 27, 1817</date>
	</ref>
	</correspContext>
	</correspDesc></pre>

Content model	<pre><content>
	<alternate>
	<classRef key="model.correspDescPart"
	minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	<classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
	maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
	</alternate>
	</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element correspDesc
	{
	att.declarable.attributes,
	att.canonical.attributes,
	att.global.attributes,
	att.typed.attributes,
	(model.correspDescPart+ | model.pLike+)
	}</pre>

9.1.15. <country>

<**country**> (country) contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [13.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed

	(@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Member of	model.placeNamePart
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s span **core:** add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode correspAction creation handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country org orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166.
Example	`<country key="DK">Denmark</country>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element country`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.naming.attributes,`
	`  att.typed.attributes,`
	`  att.datable.attributes,`
	`  macro.phraseSeq`
	`}`

9.1.16. <creation>

<creation> (creation) contains information about the creation of a text. [2.4.1. Creation 2.4. The Profile Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Member of	model.profileDescPart
Contained by	**header:** profileDesc
May contain	**core:** address date hi name ptr q ref rs term title **header:** idno **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **transcr:** subst

	character data
Note	The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest. It may also contain a more structured account of the various stages or revisions associated with the evolution of a text; this should be encoded using the `<listChange>` element. It should not be confused with the <publicationStmt> element, which records date and place of publication.

Example	`<creation>`
	` <date>Before 1987</date>`
	`</creation>`

Example	`<creation>`
	` <date when="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>`
	`</creation>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <alternate minOccurs="0"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <textNode/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="listChange"/>`
	` </alternate>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element creation`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.datable.attributes,`
	`  ( text | model.limitedPhrase | listChange )*`
	`}`

9.1.17. <date>

<**date**> (date) contains a date in any format. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.6. The Revision Description 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 15.2.3. The Setting Description 13.4. Dates]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s span **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode correspAction creation handNote language licence publicationStmt **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app

	transcr: listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Example	`<date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>`
Example	`Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>`
Example	`<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>`
Content model	`<content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content>`
Schema Declaration	`element date { att.global.attributes, att.canonical.attributes, att.datable.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, att.typed.attributes, ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )* }`

9.1.18. <del>

<**del**> (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)) (att.written (@hand)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
Member of	model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	**analysis:** cl pc phr s w **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change handNote licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **transcr:** metamark restore subst
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The `<delSpan>` element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those

	containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions. The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a `<supplied>` tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the <gap> tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the <gap> element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the `<unclear>` element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way. Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the `<certainty>` element (see 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility). There is a clear distinction in the TEI between <del> and `<surplus>` on the one hand and <gap> or `<unclear>` on the other. <del> indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author's or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text. `<surplus>` indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. <gap> or `<unclear>`, by contrast, signal an editor's or encoder's decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections 11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription and 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription.

Example	`<l>`
	` <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch <del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del>`
	` weht der Wind`
	`</l>`

Example	`<del rend="overstrike">`
	` <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5"`
	`  unit="character"/>`
	`</del>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element del`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.transcriptional.attributes,`
	`  att.typed.attributes,`
	`  att.dimensions.attributes,`
	`  macro.paraContent`
	`}`

*9.1.19. *

** ** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1. Divisions of the Body]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.divLike
Contained by	**textcrit:** lem rdg **textstructure:** body div
May contain	**analysis:** interp interpGrp span spanGrp **core:** gap lb note noteGrp p pb q quote **linking:** ab **namesdates:** listOrg listPerson **textcrit:** app listWit **textstructure:** div **transcr:** listTranspose metamark

Example	`<body>`
	` <div type="part">`
	`  <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>`

```
  <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to repress all
     exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
  <div n="1" type="chapter">
   <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
   <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest
       happiness of the greatest number [...]</p>
   <div n="1.1" type="section">
    <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
    <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be attached to
        authority [...] </p>
   </div>
   <div n="1.2" type="section">
    <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
    <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when [...] </p>
   </div>
  </div>
 </div>
</body>
```

Schematron

<s:report test="(ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, unless div is a descendant of floatingText. </s:report>

Schematron

<s:report test="(ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: p and ab may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, unless div is a descendant of floatingText. </s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0">
   <alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <alternate>
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
     </alternate>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <sequence>
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.common"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
     <sequence minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate>
       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
    </sequence>
   </alternate>
   <sequence minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element div
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.divLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      (
         (
            ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
```

```
          | (
               ( model.common, model.global* )+,
               ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
             )
          ),
          ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
       )?
    )
}
```

9.1.20. <editor>

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Member of	model.respLike
Contained by	**header:** seriesStmt titleStmt
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	A consistent format should be adopted. Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

Example	`<editor role="Technical_Editor">Ron Van den Branden</editor>`
	`<editor role="Editor-in-Chief">John Walsh</editor>`
	`<editor role="Managing_Editor">Anne Baillot</editor>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element editor`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.naming.attributes,`
	`  att.datable.attributes,`
	`  macro.phraseSeq`
	`}`

9.1.21. <encodingDesc>

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3. The Encoding Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs

	(@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.teiHeaderPart
Contained by	**header:** teiHeader
May contain	**core:** p **linking:** ab **textcrit:** variantEncoding

Example	`<encodingDesc>`
	` <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All`
	`  hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No`
	`  formatting or layout information preserved.</p>`
	`</encodingDesc>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <alternate minOccurs="1"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>`
	` </alternate>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element encodingDesc`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  ( model.encodingDescPart | model.pLike )+`
	`}`

9.1.22. <facsimile>

<**facsimile**> contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]	
Module	transcr
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls)
Member of	model.resource
Contained by	**textstructure:** TEI
May contain	**core:** graphic **transcr:** surface surfaceGrp

Example	`<facsimile>`
	` <graphic url="page1.png"/>`
	` <surface>`
	`  <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>`
	`  <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>`
	` </surface>`
	` <graphic url="page3.png"/>`
	` <graphic url="page4.png"/>`
	`</facsimile>`

Example	`<facsimile>`
	` <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300">`
	`  <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>`
	` </surface>`
	`</facsimile>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <sequence>`
	`  <elementRef key="front" minOccurs="0"/>`
	`  <alternate minOccurs="1"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="surface"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>`
	`  </alternate>`
	`  <elementRef key="back" minOccurs="0"/>`
	` </sequence>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element facsimile { att.global.attributes, att.declaring.attributes, ( front?, ( model.graphicLike | surface | surfaceGrp )+, back? ) }`

9.1.23. <fileDesc>

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	**header:** teiHeader
May contain	**header:** publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt
Note	The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.
Example	`<fileDesc> <titleStmt> <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title> </titleStmt> <publicationStmt> <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p> </publicationStmt> <sourceDesc> <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p> </sourceDesc> </fileDesc>`
Content model	`<content> <sequence> <sequence> <elementRef key="titleStmt"/> <elementRef key="editionStmt" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/> <elementRef key="seriesStmt" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <elementRef key="notesStmt" minOccurs="0"/> </sequence> <elementRef key="sourceDesc" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </content>`
Schema Declaration	`element fileDesc { att.global.attributes, ( ( titleStmt, editionStmt?, extent?, publicationStmt, seriesStmt*, notesStmt? ), sourceDesc+ ) }`

9.1.24. <gap>

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2"><gap> (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]</td></tr>
<tr><td>Module</td><td>core</td></tr>
<tr><td>Attributes</td><td>Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.timed (@start, @end) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
reason (reason) gives the reason for omission
Status Optional
Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace
Suggested values include:
cancelled (cancelled)
deleted (deleted)
editorial (editorial) for features omitted from transcription due to editorial policy
illegible (illegible)
inaudible (inaudible)
irrelevant (irrelevant)
sampling (sampling)
agent (agent) in the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Sample values include:
rubbing (rubbing) damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges
mildew (mildew) damage results from mildew on the leaf surface
smoke (smoke) damage results from smoke</td></tr>
<tr><td>Member of</td><td>model.global.edit</td></tr>
</table>

Contained by	**analysis:** cl m phr s span w **core:** add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName person roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **textstructure:** body div text **transcr:** metamark restore surface surfaceGrp
May contain	Empty element
Note	The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance. The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <del> in the case of deliberate deletion.
Example	`<gap quantity="4" unit="chars" reason="illegible"/>`
Example	`<gap quantity="1" unit="essay" reason="sampling"/>`
Example	`<del> <gap atLeast="4" atMost="8" unit="chars" reason="illegible"/> </del>`
Example	`<gap extent="several lines" reason="lost"/>`
Content model	`<content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.descLike"/> <classRef key="model.certLike"/> </alternate> </content>`
Schema Declaration	`element gap { att.global.attributes, att.timed.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, attribute reason { list { ("cancelled" | "deleted" | "editorial" | "illegible" | "inaudible" | "irrelevant" | "sampling")+ } }?, attribute agent { text }?, (model.descLike | model.certLike)* }`

9.1.25. <graphic>

<**graphic**> (graphic) indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it. [3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components 11.1. Digital Facsimiles]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs,

	@copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.media (@width, @height, @scale) (att.internetMedia (@mimeType)) att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls)
Member of	model.graphicLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change handNote licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **transcr:** facsimile metamark restore surface
May contain	Empty element
Note	The *mimeType* attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the *url* attribute. Within the body of a text, a <graphic> element indicates the presence of a graphic component in the source itself. Within the context of a <facsimile> or <sourceDoc> element, however, a <graphic> element provides an additional digital representation of some part of the source being encoded.

Example	`<figure>`
	`<graphic url="fig1.png"/>`
	`<head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>`
	`<figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>`
	`</figure>`

Example	`<facsimile>`
	`<surfaceGrp n="leaf1">`
	`<surface>`
	`<graphic url="page1.png"/>`
	`</surface>`
	`<surface>`
	`<graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>`
	`<graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>`
	`</surface>`
	`</surfaceGrp>`
	`</facsimile>`

Content model	`<content>`
	`<classRef key="model.descLike"`
	`minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element graphic`
	`{`
	`att.global.attributes,`
	`att.media.attributes,`
	`att.resourced.attributes,`
	`att.declaring.attributes,`
	`model.descLike*`
	`}`

9.1.26. <handNote>

<handNote> (note on hand) describes a particular style or hand distinguished within a manuscript. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)
Contained by	**transcr:** handNotes
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

	core: add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp p pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data

Example	`<handNote scope="sole">`
	` <p>Written in insular`
	`  phase II half-uncial with interlinear Old English gloss in an Anglo-Saxon pointed`
	`  minuscule.</p>`
	`</handNote>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element handNote`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.handFeatures.attributes,`
	`  macro.specialPara`
	`}`

9.1.27. <handNotes>

<handNotes> contains one or more <handNote> elements documenting the different hands identified within the source texts. [11.3.2.1. Document Hands]	
Module	transcr
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.profileDescPart
Contained by	**header:** profileDesc
May contain	**header:** handNote

Example	`<handNotes>`
	` <handNote xml:id="H1" script="copperplate"`
	`  medium="brown-ink">Carefully written with regular descenders</handNote>`
	` <handNote xml:id="H2" script="print"`
	`  medium="pencil">Unschooled scrawl</handNote>`
	`</handNotes>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <elementRef key="handNote" minOccurs="1"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element handNotes { att.global.attributes, handNote+ }`

9.1.28. <hi>

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand)

Member of	model.hiLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl m phr s span w **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode creation handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data

Example	`<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>`
	`that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,`
	`in consideration of the said intended marriage ...`

Content model	`<content>`
	`<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element hi { att.global.attributes, att.written.attributes, macro.paraContent }`

9.1.29. <idno>

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [13.3.1. Basic Principles 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2.5. The Series Statement 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (type, @subtype) type — categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc. **Derived from:** att.typed **Status:** Optional **Datatype:** teidata.enumerated **Suggested values include:** **ISBN** International Standard Book Number: a 13- or (if assigned prior to 2007) 10-digit identifying number assigned by the publishing industry to a published book or similar item, registered with the International ISBN Agency.

	ISSN International Standard Serial Number: an eight-digit number to uniquely identify a serial publication. **DOI** Digital Object Identifier: a unique string of letters and numbers assigned to an electronic document. **URI** Uniform Resource Identifier: a string of characters to uniquely identify a resource which usually contains indication of the means of accessing that resource, the name of its host, and its filepath. **VIAF** A data number in the Virtual Internet Authority File assigned to link different names in catalogs around the world for the same entity. **ESTC** English Short-Title Catalogue number: an identifying number assigned to a document in English printed in the British Isles or North America before 1801. **OCLC** OCLC control number (record number) for the union catalog record in WorldCat, a union catalog for member libraries in the Online Computer Library Center global cooperative.
Member of	model.nameLike model.personPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s span **core:** add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode correspAction creation handNote idno language licence publicationStmt seriesStmt **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country org orgName persName person roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**header:** idno character data
Note	<idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for *type* on <idno> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI.

Example	`<idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno>`
	`<idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno>`
	`<idno type="DOI">10.1000/123</idno>`
	`<idno type="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</idno>`
	`<idno type="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</idno>`
	`<idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno>`
	`<idno type="Wing">C695</idno>`
	`<idno type="oldCat">`
	`<g ref="#sym"/>345`
	`</idno>`
	In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a `<glyph>` or `<char>` element referenced here as `#sym`.

Content model	`<content>`
	`<alternate minOccurs="0"`
	`maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`<textNode/>`
	`<classRef key="model.gLike"/>`

	<elementRef key="idno"/> </alternate> </content>

Schema Declaration	element idno
	{
	att.global.attributes,
	att.sortable.attributes,
	att.datable.attributes,
	att.typed.attribute.subtype,
	attribute type
	{
	"ISBN" | "ISSN" | "DOI" | "URI" | "VIAF" | "ESTC" | "OCLC"
	}?,
	(text | model.gLike | idno)*
	}

9.1.30. <interp>

<interp> (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text. [17.3. Spans and Interpretations]

Module	analysis
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.interpLike (@inst) att.typed (type, @subtype) type — indicates what kind of phenomenon is being noted in the passage. **Status** Recommended **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Sample values include:** **image** identifies an image in the passage.; **character** identifies a character associated with the passage.; **theme** identifies a theme in the passage.; **allusion** identifies an allusion to another text.
Member of	model.global.meta
Contained by	**analysis:** cl interpGrp m phr s span w **core:** add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName person roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **textstructure:** body div text **transcr:** metamark restore surface surfaceGrp
May contain	Character data only
Note	Generally, each <interp> element carries an *xml:id* attribute. This permits the encoder to explicitly associate the interpretation represented by the content of an <interp> with any textual element through its *ana* attribute. Alternatively (or, in addition) an <interp> may carry an *inst* attribute that points to one or more textual elements to which the analysis represented by the content of the <interp> applies.
Example	<interp type="structuralunit" xml:id="ana_am">aftermath</interp>

Content model	<content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.descLike"/> <classRef key="model.certLike"/> </alternate> </content>

Schema Declaration	element interp
	{
	att.global.attributes,
	att.interpLike.attribute.inst,
	att.typed.attribute.subtype,
	attribute type { text }?,
	(text | model.gLike | model.descLike | model.certLike)*
	}

9.1.31. <interpGrp>

<interpGrp> (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type. [17.3. Spans and Interpretations]	
Module	analysis
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.interpLike (@inst) att.typed (type, @subtype) type — indicates what kind of phenomenon is being noted in the passage. **Status** Recommended **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Sample values include:** **image** identifies an image in the passage. **character** identifies a character associated with the passage. **theme** identifies a theme in the passage. **allusion** identifies an allusion to another text.
Member of	model.global.meta
Contained by	**analysis:** cl m phr s span w **core:** add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName person roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **textstructure:** body div text **transcr:** metamark restore surface surfaceGrp
May contain	**analysis:** interp
Note	Any number of <interp> elements.
Example	<interpGrp resp="#TMA" type="structuralunit"> <desc>basic structural organization</desc> <interp xml:id="I1">introduction</interp> <interp xml:id="I2">conflict</interp> <interp xml:id="I3">climax</interp>

	<interp xml:id="I4">revenge</interp> <interp xml:id="I5">reconciliation</interp> <interp xml:id="I6">aftermath</interp> </interpGrp> <bibl xml:id="TMA"> <!-- bibliographic citation for source of this interpretive framework --> </bibl>
Content model	<content> <sequence> <classRef key="model.descLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <elementRef key="interp" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </content>

Schema Declaration	element interpGrp
	{
	att.global.attributes,
	att.interpLike.attribute.inst,
	att.typed.attribute.subtype,
	attribute type { text }?,
	(model.descLike*, interp+)
	}

9.1.32. <keywords>

<keywords> (keywords) contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) scheme — identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.pointer
Contained by	**header:** textClass
May contain	**core:** term
Note	Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which each <term> appears within an <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated. If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the *scheme* attribute.
Example	<keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net"> <term>Babbage, Charles</term> <term>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</term> </keywords>
Example	<keywords> <term>Fermented beverages</term> <term>Central Andes</term> <term>Schinus molle</term> <term>Molle beer</term> <term>Indigenous peoples</term> <term>Ethnography</term> <term>Archaeology</term> </keywords>
Content model	<content> <alternate> <elementRef key="term" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <elementRef key="list"/> </alternate> </content>

Schema Declaration	`element keywords { att.global.attributes, attribute scheme { text }?, ( term+ | list ) }`

9.1.33. <langUsage>

<langUsage> (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage 2.4. The Profile Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)
Member of	model.profileDescPart
Contained by	**header:** profileDesc
May contain	**core:** p **header:** language **linking:** ab
Example	`<langUsage> <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québecois</language> <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language> <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language> </langUsage>`
Content model	`<content> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <elementRef key="language" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </alternate> </content>`
Schema Declaration	`element langUsage { att.global.attributes, att.declarable.attributes, ( model.pLike+ | language+ ) }`

9.1.34. <language>

<language> (language) characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) ident — (identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in BCP 47 which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which is referenced by the global *xml:lang* attribute. **Status** Required **Datatype** teidata.language usage — specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses this language. **Status** Optional

	Datatype nonNegativeInteger
Contained by	**header:** langUsage
May contain	**analysis:** interp interpGrp span spanGrp **core:** address date gap hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q ref rs term title **header:** idno **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark subst character data
Note	Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element.

Example	`<langUsage>`
	` <language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language>`
	` <language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic script</language>`
	` <language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</language>`
	`</langUsage>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element language`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  attribute ident { text },`
	`  attribute usage { text }?,`
	`  macro.phraseSeq.limited`
	`}`

9.1.35. <lb>

<lb> (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements 7.2.5. Speech Contents]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)
Member of	model.milestoneLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl m phr s span w **core:** add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country org orgName persName person roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **textstructure:** body div text **transcr:** metamark restore subst surface surfaceGrp
May contain	Empty element
Note	By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The *n* attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the `<l>` element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.

	The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

Example	This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:
	`<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>`
	`<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>`
	`<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l>`

Example	This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The *break* attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.
	`<titlePart>`
	` <lb/>With Additions, ne-<lb break="no"/>ver before Printed.`
	`</titlePart>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <empty/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element lb`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.typed.attributes,`
	`  att.edition.attributes,`
	`  att.spanning.attributes,`
	`  att.breaking.attributes,`
	`  empty`
	`}`

9.1.36. <lem>

<lem> (lemma) contains the lemma, or base text, of a textual variation. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	
Module	textcrit
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.textCritical (@type, @cause, @varSeq, @require) (att.written (@hand)) att.witnessed (@wit)
Contained by	**textcrit:** app
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp p pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **textstructure:** div **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	The term *lemma* is used in text criticism to describe the reading given in the main text, which may be used as a heading in the apparatus itself. This usage connects it to mathematics (where a lemma is a proven proposition used as a step in a proof, a "given") and natural-language processing (where a lemma is the dictionary headword associated with an inflected form in the running text).

Example	`<app>`
	` <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>`
	` <rdg wit="#La" type="substantive">Experiment</rdg>`
	` <rdg wit="#Ra2" type="substantive">Eryment</rdg>`
	`</app>`

Content model	`<content>` ` <alternate minOccurs="0"`

```
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.divPart"/>
  <elementRef key="titlePage"/>
  <elementRef key="argument"/>
  <elementRef key="byline"/>
  <elementRef key="docAuthor"/>
  <elementRef key="docDate"/>
  <elementRef key="docEdition"/>
  <elementRef key="docImprint"/>
  <elementRef key="docTitle"/>
  <elementRef key="epigraph"/>
  <elementRef key="imprimatur"/>
  <elementRef key="titlePart"/>
  <elementRef key="epilogue"/>
  <elementRef key="performance"/>
  <elementRef key="prologue"/>
  <elementRef key="set"/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.rdgPart"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element lem
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.textCritical.attributes,
   att.witnessed.attributes,
   (
      text
    | model.divLike
    | model.divPart
    | titlePage
    | argument
    | byline
    | docAuthor
    | docDate
    | docEdition
    | docImprint
    | docTitle
    | epigraph
    | imprimatur
    | titlePart
    | epilogue
    | performance
    | prologue
    | set
    | model.gLike
    | model.phrase
    | model.inter
    | model.global
    | model.rdgPart
   )*
}
```

9.1.37. <licence>

<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Member of	model.availabilityPart
Contained by	**header:** availability
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w

	core: add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp p pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	A <licence> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The *target* attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The *when*, *notBefore*, *notAfter*, *from* or *to* attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.
Example	`<licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing"> Licence: Creative Commons At` `</licence>`

Example	`<availability>`
	` <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/"`
	`  notBefore="2013-01-01">`
	`  <p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence`
	`  applies to this document.</p>`
	`  <p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p>`
	` </licence>`
	`</availability>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element licence`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.pointing.attributes,`
	`  att.datable.attributes,`
	`  macro.specialPara`
	`}`

9.1.38. <listOrg>

<listOrg> (list of organizations) contains a list of elements, each of which provides information about an identifiable organization. [13.2.2. Organizational Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey)
Member of	model.listLike model.orgPart
Contained by	**core:** add del hi note p q quote ref title **corpus:** particDesc **header:** change handNote licence sourceDesc **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** listOrg org **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **textstructure:** body div **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**namesdates:** listOrg org
Note	The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of organizations of a particular type if convenient.

Example	`<listOrg>`
	` <head>Libyans</head>`
	` <org>`
	`  <orgName>Adyrmachidae</orgName>`

```
  <desc>These people have, in most points, the same customs as the Egyptians, but
     use the costume of the Libyans. Their women wear on each leg a ring made of
     bronze [...]</desc>
 </org>
 <org>
  <orgName>Nasamonians</orgName>
  <desc>In summer they leave their flocks and herds upon the sea-shore, and go up
     the country to a place called Augila, where they gather the dates from the
     palms [...]</desc>
 </org>
 <org>
  <orgName>Garamantians</orgName>
  <desc>[...] avoid all society or intercourse with their fellow-men, have no
     weapon of war, and do not know how to defend themselves. [...]</desc>
<!-- ... -->
 </org>
</listOrg>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="1"/>
   <elementRef key="listRelation"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <alternate minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="org" minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listOrg" minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="1"/>
   </alternate>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="relation"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listRelation"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listOrg
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   (
      model.headLike*,
      desc*,
      ( relation | listRelation )*,
      ( ( org | listOrg )+, ( relation | listRelation )* )+
   )
}
```

9.1.39. <listPerson>

<listPerson> (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [13.3.2. The Person Element 15.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module	namesdates
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey)
Member of	model.listLike model.orgPart
Contained by	**core:** add del hi note p q quote ref title

	corpus: particDesc **header:** change handNote licence sourceDesc **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat **namesdates:** listPerson org **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **textstructure:** body div **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**namesdates:** listPerson org person
Note	The *type* attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient.

Example	`<listPerson type="respondents">`
	` <personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/>`
	` <person xml:id="P1234" sex="2" age="mid"/>`
	` <person xml:id="P4332" sex="1" age="mid"/>`
	` <listRelation>`
	`  <relation type="personal" name="spouse"`
	`  mutual="#P1234 #P4332"/>`
	` </listRelation>`
	`</listPerson>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <sequence>`
	`  <classRef key="model.headLike"`
	`  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`  <alternate minOccurs="0"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"`
	`  maxOccurs="1"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="listRelation"`
	`  minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>`
	`  </alternate>`
	`  <sequence minOccurs="1"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <alternate minOccurs="1"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <classRef key="model.personLike"`
	`  minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="listPerson"`
	`  minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>`
	`  </alternate>`
	`  <alternate minOccurs="0"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <elementRef key="relation"`
	`  minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="listRelation"`
	`  minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>`
	`  </alternate>`
	`  </sequence>`
	` </sequence>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element listPerson`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.typed.attributes,`
	`  att.declarable.attributes,`
	`  att.sortable.attributes,`
	`  (`
	`  model.headLike*,`
	`  desc*,`
	`  ( relation | listRelation )*,`
	`  ( ( model.personLike | listPerson )+, ( relation | listRelation )* )+`
	`  )`
	`}`

9.1.40. <listTranspose>

<listTranspose> supplies a list of transpositions, each of which is indicated at some point in a document typically by means of metamarks. [11.3.4.5. Transpositions]	
Module	transcr
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs

	(@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.global.meta model.profileDescPart
Contained by	**analysis:** cl m phr s span w **core:** add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode handNote language licence profileDesc **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName person roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **textstructure:** body div text **transcr:** metamark restore surface surfaceGrp
May contain	**transcr:** transpose

Example	`<listTranspose>`
	` <transpose>`
	`  <ptr target="#ib02"/>`
	`  <ptr target="#ib01"/>`
	` </transpose>`
	`</listTranspose>`
	This example might be used for a source document which indicates in some way that the elements identified by `ib02` and code `ib01` should be read in that order (ib02 followed by ib01), rather than in the reading order in which they are presented in the source.

Content model	`<content>`
	` <sequence>`
	`  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="transpose" minOccurs="1"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	` </sequence>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element listTranspose { att.global.attributes, ( desc*, transpose+ ) }`

9.1.41. <listWit>

<listWit> (witness list) lists definitions for all the witnesses referred to by a critical apparatus, optionally grouped hierarchically. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	
Module	textcrit
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey)
Member of	model.listLike
Contained by	**core:** add del hi note p q quote ref title **header:** change handNote licence sourceDesc **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat **textcrit:** lem listWit rdg witness **textstructure:** body div **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**textcrit:** listWit witness
Note	May contain a series of <witness> or <listWit> elements. The provision of a <listWit> element simplifies the automatic processing of the apparatus, e.g. the reconstruction of the readings for all witnesses from an exhaustive apparatus. Situations commonly arise where there are many more or less fragmentary witnesses, such that there may be quite distinct groups of witnesses for different parts of a text or collection of texts. Such groups may be given separately, or nested within a single <listWit> element at the beginning of the file listing all the witnesses, partial and complete, for the text, with the

	attestation of fragmentary witnesses indicated within the apparatus by use of the <witStart> and <witEnd> elements described in section 12.1.5. Fragmentary Witnesses. Note however that a given witness can only be defined once, and can therefore only appear within a single <listWit> element.

Example	`<listWit>`
	` <witness xml:id="HL26">Ellesmere, Huntingdon Library 26.C.9</witness>`
	` <witness xml:id="PN392">Hengwrt, National Library of Wales,`
	`  Aberystwyth, Peniarth 392D</witness>`
	` <witness xml:id="RP149">Bodleian Library Rawlinson Poetic 149`
	`  (see further <ptr target="#MSRP149"/>)</witness>`
	`</listWit>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <sequence>`
	`  <classRef key="model.headLike"`
	`  minOccurs="0"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`  <alternate minOccurs="1"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <elementRef key="witness"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="listWit"/>`
	`  </alternate>`
	` </sequence>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element listWit`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.sortable.attributes,`
	`  ( model.headLike?, desc*, ( witness | listWit )+ )`
	`}`

9.1.42. <m>

<m> (morpheme) represents a grammatical morpheme. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]	
Module	analysis
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.notated (@notation) baseForm supplies the morpheme's base form. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.word
Member of	model.segLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl m phr s w **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change handNote licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c interp interpGrp m span spanGrp **core:** gap hi lb note noteGrp pb q **linking:** seg **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark character data
Note	The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of morpheme, taking values such as clitic, prefix, stem, etc. as appropriate.

Example	`<w type="adjective">`
	` <w type="noun">`
	`  <m type="prefix" baseForm="con">com</m>`

```
  <m type="root">fort</m>
 </w>
 <m type="suffix">able</m>
</w>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>
  <elementRef key="seg"/>
  <elementRef key="m"/>
  <elementRef key="c"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element m
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.segLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.notated.attributes,
   attribute baseForm { text }?,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.hiLike | seg | m | c | model.global )*
}
```

9.1.43. <metamark>

<metamark> contains or describes any kind of graphic or written signal within a document the function of which is to determine how it should be read rather than forming part of the actual content of the document. [11.3.4.2. Metamarks]

Module	transcr
Attributes	Attributes att.spanning (@spanTo) att.placement (@place) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) function — describes the function (for example status, insertion, deletion, transposition) of the metamark. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.word target — identifies one or more elements to which the metamark applies. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space
Member of	model.global
Contained by	**analysis:** cl m phr s span w **core:** add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName person roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **textstructure:** body div text **transcr:** metamark restore surface surfaceGrp
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp p pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement

	textcrit: app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data

Example	`<surface>`
	` <metamark function="used" rend="line"`
	`  target="#X2"/>`
	` <zone xml:id="zone-X2">`
	`  <line>I am that halfgrown <add>angry</add> boy, fallen asleep</line>`
	`  <line>The tears of foolish passion yet undried</line>`
	`  <line>upon my cheeks.</line>`
	`<!-- ... -->`
	`  <line>I pass through <add>the</add> travels and <del>fortunes</del> of`
	`  <retrace>thirty</retrace>`
	`  </line>`
	`  <line>years and become old,</line>`
	`  <line>Each in its due order comes and goes,</line>`
	`  <line>And thus a message for me comes.</line>`
	`  <line>The</line>`
	` </zone>`
	` <metamark function="used"`
	`  target="#zone-X2">Entered - Yes</metamark>`
	`</surface>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element metamark`
	`{`
	`  att.spanning.attributes,`
	`  att.placement.attributes,`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  attribute function { text }?,`
	`  attribute target { list { + } }?,`
	`  macro.specialPara`
	`}`

9.1.44. <name>

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [3.6.1. Referring Strings]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.nameLike.agent model.personPart
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s span **core:** add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode correspAction creation handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country org orgName persName person roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp

	namesdates: country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

Example	`<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name>`
	`<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>`
	`<name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name>`
	`<name type="person" ref="#HOC001">Occleve</name>`

Content model	`<content>`
	`<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element name`
	`{`
	`att.global.attributes,`
	`att.personal.attributes,`
	`att.datable.attributes,`
	`att.editLike.attributes,`
	`att.typed.attributes,`
	`macro.phraseSeq`
	`}`

9.1.45. <note>

<note> (note) contains a note or annotation. [3.9.1. Notes and Simple Annotation 2.2.6. The Notes Statement 3.12.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.placement (@place) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand) att.anchoring (@anchored, @targetEnd)
Member of	model.correspActionPart model.correspDescPart model.noteLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl m phr s span w **core:** add address date del editor hi name note noteGrp p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode correspAction correspDesc handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country org orgName persName person roleName settlement **textcrit:** app lem rdg witness **textstructure:** body div text **transcr:** metamark restore surface surfaceGrp
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp p pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Example	In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly": `And yet it is not only`

```
 in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the
 painterly <note place="bottom" type="gloss"
 resp="#MDMH">
 <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two
 distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,
 the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid
 confusion, they have been distinguished in English as
<mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and
<mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively.
</note> style of the
 Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this
 psychological significance.

<!-- elsewhere in the document -->
<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">
 <resp>translation from German to English</resp>
 <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name>
</respStmt>
```

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header.

Example

The global *n* attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

```
Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the
 family during the second half of the eleventh century, <note n="126" anchored="true"> The
 alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to
 Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from Geniza documents
 published by Jacob Mann.
```

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element note
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.pointing.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   att.anchoring.attributes,
   macro.specialPara
}
```

9.1.46. <noteGrp>

<noteGrp> contains a group of notes [3.9.1.1. Encoding Grouped Notes]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.placement (@place) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand) att.anchoring (@anchored, @targetEnd)
Member of	model.correspActionPart model.correspDescPart model.noteLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl m phr s span w **core:** add address date del editor hi name note noteGrp p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode correspAction correspDesc handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country org orgName persName person roleName settlement **textcrit:** app lem rdg **textstructure:** body div text **transcr:** metamark restore surface surfaceGrp

May contain	**core:** note noteGrp
Example	In the following example, there are two notes in different languages, each specifying the content of the annotation relating to the same fragment of text: `<p>(...) tamen reuerendos dominos archiepiscopum et canonicos Leopolienses necnon episcopum in duplicibus Quatuortemporibus <noteGrp> <note xml:lang="en">Quatuor Tempora, so called dry fast days (Wednesday, Friday, and Saturday) falling on each of the quarters of the year. In the first quarter they were called Cinerum (following Ash Wednesday), second Spiritus (following Pentecost), third Crucis (after the Exaltation of the Holy Cross, September 14th), and Luciae in the fourth (after the feast of St. Lucia, December 13th). </note> <note xml:lang="pl">Quatuor Tempora, tzw. Suche dni postne (#roda, pi#tek i sobota) przypadaj#ce cztery razy w roku. W pierwszym kwartale zwa#y si# Cinerum (po Popielcu), w drugim Spiritus (po Zielonych #wi#tach), w trzecim Crucis (po #wi#cie Podwy#szenia Krzy#a 14 wrze#nia), w czwartym Luciae (po dniu #w. #ucji 13 grudnia). </note> </noteGrp> totaliter expediui. </p>`
Content model	`<content> <sequence> <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="note"/> <elementRef key="noteGrp"/> </alternate> </sequence> </content>`
Schema Declaration	`element noteGrp { att.global.attributes, att.placement.attributes, att.pointing.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.written.attributes, att.anchoring.attributes, ( desc*, ( note | noteGrp )+ ) }`

9.1.47. <objectType>

<objectType> (object type) contains a word or phrase describing the type of object being referred to. [10.3.2. Material and Object Type]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)
Member of	model.pPart.msdesc
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s span **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode creation handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg

	msdescription: objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	The *ref* attribute may be used to point to one or more items within a taxonomy of types of object, defined either internally or externally.

Example	`<physDesc>`
	` <p> Paper and vellum <objectType>codex</objectType> in modern cloth binding.</p>`
	`</physDesc>`

Example	`<physDesc>`
	` <p>Fragment of a re-used marble <objectType>funerary stele</objectType>.`
	` </p>`
	`</physDesc>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element objectType`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.canonical.attributes,`
	`  macro.phraseSeq`
	`}`

9.1.48. <org>

<**org**> (organization) provides information about an identifiable organization such as a business, a tribe, or any other grouping of people. [13.3.3. Organizational Data]

Module	namesdates
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.sortable (@sortKey) role — specifies a primary role or classification for the organization. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace **Note** Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, familyGroup, or politicalParty, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a `<desc>` for each `<valItem>` element in the schema specification of the project's customization.
Member of	model.personLike
Contained by	**corpus:** particDesc **namesdates:** listOrg listPerson org
May contain	**core:** lb name note noteGrp p pb ptr rs **header:** idno **linking:** ab **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson org orgName persName person roleName settlement

Example	`<org xml:id="JAMs">`
	` <orgName>Justified Ancients of Mummu</orgName>`
	` <desc>An underground anarchist collective spearheaded by`
	` <persName>Hagbard Celine</persName>, who fight the Illuminati`
	`  from a golden submarine, the <name>Leif Ericson</name>`
	` </desc>`
	` <bibl>`
	`  <author>Robert Shea</author>`
	`  <author>Robert Anton Wilson</author>`

```
  <title>The Illuminatus! Trilogy</title>
 </bibl>
</org>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate>
   <classRef key="model.pLike"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.nameLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.orgPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>
   </alternate>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
   <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
   <elementRef key="link"/>
   <elementRef key="ptr"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.personLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element org
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   attribute role { list { + } }?,
   (
      model.headLike*,
      (
         model.pLike*
       | (
            model.labelLike
          | model.nameLike
          | model.placeLike
          | model.orgPart
          | model.milestoneLike
         )*
      ),
      ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike | linkGrp | link | ptr )*,
      model.personLike*
   )
}
```

9.1.49. <orgName>

<orgName> (organization name) contains an organizational name. [13.2.2. Organizational Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.nameLike.agent
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s span **core:** add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode correspAction creation handNote language licence

	linking: ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country org orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Example	`About a year back, a question of considerable interest was agitated in the <orgName key="PAS1" type="voluntary"> <placeName key="PEN">Pennsyla.</placeName> Abolition Society </orgName> [...]`
Content model	`<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content>`
Schema Declaration	`element orgName { att.global.attributes, att.datable.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.personal.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }`

9.1.50. <p>

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.5. Speech Contents]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.pLike
Contained by	**core:** note q quote **corpus:** particDesc **header:** availability change correspAction correspDesc encodingDesc handNote langUsage licence publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc **msdescription:** accMat physDesc **namesdates:** org person **textcrit:** lem rdg **textstructure:** body div **transcr:** metamark
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst

	character data
Example	Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said. <q>What have you done?</q> <q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied Thjostolf. <q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said. <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for me.</q>
Schematron	<s:report test="not(ancestor::tei:floatingText) and (ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote | parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure)"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other paragraphs or ab elements. </s:report>
Schematron	<s:report test="(ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg) and not(parent::tei:figure or parent::tei:note or ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab, unless p is a child of figure or note, or is a descendant of floatingText. </s:report>
Content model	<content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content>

Schema Declaration	element p
	{
	att.global.attributes,
	att.declaring.attributes,
	att.fragmentable.attributes,
	att.written.attributes,
	macro.paraContent
	}

9.1.51. <particDesc>

<particDesc> (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [15.2. Contextual Information]	
Module	corpus
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)
Member of	model.profileDescPart
Contained by	**header:** profileDesc
May contain	**core:** p **linking:** ab **namesdates:** listOrg listPerson org person
Note	May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a structured list of persons and person groups, with an optional formal specification of any relationships amongst them.
Example	<particDesc> <listPerson> <person xml:id="P-1234" sex="2" age="mid"> Female informant, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently. Socio-Economic status B2. </person> <person xml:id="P-4332" sex="1"> <persName> <surname>Hancock</surname> <forename>Antony</forename> <forename>Aloysius</forename> <forename>St John</forename> </persName> <residence notAfter="1959">

```
    <address>
     <street>Railway Cuttings</street>
     <settlement>East Cheam</settlement>
    </address>
   </residence>
   <occupation>comedian</occupation>
  </person>
  <listRelation>
   <relation type="personal" name="spouse"
    mutual="#P-1234 #P-4332"/>
  </listRelation>
 </listPerson>
</particDesc>
```

This example shows both a very simple person description, and a very detailed one, using some of the more specialized elements from the module for Names and Dates.

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.personLike"/>
   <elementRef key="listPerson"/>
   <elementRef key="listOrg"/>
  </alternate>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element particDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   ( model.pLike+ | ( model.personLike | listPerson | listOrg )+ )
}
```

9.1.52. <pb>

<pb> (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)
Member of	model.milestoneLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl m phr s span w **core:** add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country org orgName persName person roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **textstructure:** body div text **transcr:** metamark restore subst surface surfaceGrp
May contain	Empty element
Note	A <pb> element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb> element itself. The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the page break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

Example	Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.
	`<p> ... <pb n="145" ed="ed2"/>`
	`<!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <pb n="283" ed="ed1"/>`

```
<!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... </p>
```

Example	A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the *facs* attribute
	`<body>`
	`<pb n="1" facs="page1.png"/>`
	`<!-- page1.png contains an image of the page;`
	`the text it contains is encoded here -->`
	`<p>`
	`<!-- ... -->`
	`</p>`
	`<pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/>`
	`<!-- similarly, for page 2 -->`
	`<p>`
	`<!-- ... -->`
	`</p>`
	`</body>`

Content model	`<content>`
	`<empty/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element pb`
	`{`
	`att.global.attributes,`
	`att.typed.attributes,`
	`att.edition.attributes,`
	`att.spanning.attributes,`
	`att.breaking.attributes,`
	`empty`
	`}`

9.1.53. <pc>

<pc> (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark. [17.1.2. Below the Word Level 17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation]

Module	analysis
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.linguistic (@lemma, @lemmaRef, @pos, @msd, @join) (att.lexicographic.normalized (@norm, @orig)) force — indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Legal values are:** **strong** the punctuation mark is a word separator; **weak** the punctuation mark is not a word separator; **inter** the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator unit — provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated pre — indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.truthValue
Member of	model.segLike

Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s w **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change handNote licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c **core:** add del **transcr:** restore subst character data

Example	<pre><phr>
	 <w>do</w>
	 <w>you</w>
	 <w>understand</w>
	 <pc type="interrogative">?</pc>
	</phr></pre>

Example	Example encoding of the German sentence *Wir fahren in den Urlaub.*, encoded with attributes from att.linguistic discussed in section .
	<pre><s>
	 <w pos="PPER" msd="1.Pl.*.Nom">Wir</w>
	 <w pos="VVFIN" msd="1.Pl.Pres.Ind">fahren</w>
	 <w pos="APPR" msd="--">in</w>
	 <w pos="ART" msd="Def.Masc.Akk.Sg.">den</w>
	 <w pos="NN" msd="Masc.Akk.Sg.">Urlaub</w>
	 <pc pos="$." msd="--" join="left">.</pc>
	</s></pre>

Content model	<pre><content>
	 <alternate minOccurs="0"
	 maxOccurs="unbounded">
	 <textNode/>
	 <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
	 <elementRef key="c"/>
	 <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
	 </alternate>
	</content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element pc
	{
	 att.global.attributes,
	 att.segLike.attributes,
	 att.typed.attributes,
	 att.linguistic.attributes,
	 attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,
	 attribute unit { text }?,
	 attribute pre { text }?,
	 (text | model.gLike | c | model.pPart.edit)*
	}</pre>

9.1.54. <persName>

<persName> (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.nameLike.agent model.persStateLike

Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s span **core:** add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode correspAction creation handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country org orgName persName person roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data

Example	`<persName>`
	` <forename>Edward</forename>`
	` <forename>George</forename>`
	` <surname type="linked">Bulwer-Lytton</surname>, <roleName>Baron Lytton of`
	` <placeName>Knebworth</placeName>`
	` </roleName>`
	`</persName>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element persName`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.datable.attributes,`
	`  att.editLike.attributes,`
	`  att.personal.attributes,`
	`  att.typed.attributes,`
	`  macro.phraseSeq`
	`}`

9.1.55. <person>

<person> (person) provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [13.3.2. The Person Element 15.2.2. The Participant Description]

Module	namesdates
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.sortable (@sortKey) role — specifies a primary role or classification for the person. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace **Note** Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, author, relative, or servant, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a `<valList>` element in the project schema specification. sex — specifies the sex of the person. **Status** Optional

	Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace **Note** Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes* http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People* http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection. age specifies an age group for the person. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Note** Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a `<valList>` element in the project schema specification.
Member of	model.personLike
Contained by	**corpus:** particDesc **namesdates:** listPerson org
May contain	**analysis:** interp interpGrp span spanGrp **core:** gap lb name note noteGrp p pb ptr **header:** idno **linking:** ab **namesdates:** persName **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark
Note	May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the model.personPart class.

Example	`<person sex="F" age="adult">`
	`<p>Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French status B2.</p>`
	`</person>`

Example	`<person sex="intersex" role="god"`
	`age="immortal">`
	`<persName>Hermaphroditos</persName>`
	`<persName xml:lang="grc">##μ#########</persName>`
	`</person>`

Example	`<person xml:id="Ovi01" sex="1" role="poet">`
	`<persName xml:lang="en">Ovid</persName>`
	`<persName xml:lang="la">Publius Ovidius Naso</persName>`
	`<birth when="-0044-03-20"> 20 March 43 BC <placeName>`
	`<settlement type="city">Sulmona</settlement>`
	`<country key="IT">Italy</country>`
	`</placeName>`
	`</birth>`
	`<death notBefore="0017" notAfter="0018">17 or 18 AD <placeName>`
	`<settlement type="city">Tomis (Constanta)</settlement>`
	`<country key="RO">Romania</country>`
	`</placeName>`
	`</death>`
	`</person>`

Content model	`<content>`
	`<alternate>`
	`<classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"`
	`maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`<alternate minOccurs="0"`
	`maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`<classRef key="model.personPart"/>`
	`<classRef key="model.global"/>`
	`<elementRef key="ptr"/>`

	`  </alternate>`
	` </alternate>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element person`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.editLike.attributes,`
	`  att.sortable.attributes,`
	`  attribute role { list { + } }?,`
	`  attribute sex { list { + } }?,`
	`  attribute age { text }?,`
	`  ( model.pLike+ | ( model.personPart | model.global | ptr )* )`
	`}`

9.1.56. <phr>

<phr> (phrase) represents a grammatical phrase. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]	
Module	analysis
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.notated (@notation)
Member of	model.segLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change handNote licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of phrase, taking values such as noun, verb, preposition, etc. as appropriate.

Example	`<phr type="verb"`
	` function="extraposted_modifier">To talk`
	`<phr type="preposition"`
	`  function="complement">of`
	` <phr type="noun" function="object">many things</phr>`
	` </phr>`
	`</phr>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element phr`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.segLike.attributes,`
	`  att.typed.attributes,`
	`  att.notated.attributes,`
	`  macro.phraseSeq`
	`}`

9.1.57. <physDesc>

<**physDesc**> (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object optionally subdivided using more specialized elements from the model.physDescPart class. [10.7. Physical Description]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	—
May contain	**core:** p **linking:** ab **msdescription:** accMat

Example	`<physDesc>`
	`<objectDesc form="codex">`
	`<supportDesc material="perg">`
	`<support>Parchment.</support>`
	`<extent>i + 55 leaves`
	`<dimensions scope="all" type="leaf"`
	`unit="inch">`
	`<height>7¾</height>`
	`<width>5#</width>`
	`</dimensions>`
	`</extent>`
	`</supportDesc>`
	`<layoutDesc>`
	`<layout columns="2">In double columns.</layout>`
	`</layoutDesc>`
	`</objectDesc>`
	`<handDesc>`
	`<p>Written in more than one hand.</p>`
	`</handDesc>`
	`<decoDesc>`
	`<p>With a few coloured capitals.</p>`
	`</decoDesc>`
	`</physDesc>`

Content model	`<content>`
	`<sequence>`
	`<classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"`
	`maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`<classRef key="model.physDescPart"`
	`expand="sequenceOptional"/>`
	`</sequence>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element physDesc { att.global.attributes, ( model.pLike*, accMat? ) }`

9.1.58. <postCode>

<**postCode**> (postal code) contains a numerical or alphanumeric code used as part of a postal address to simplify sorting or delivery of mail. [3.6.2. Addresses]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.addrPart
Contained by	**core:** address
May contain	Character data only
Note	The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used.
Example	`<postCode>HR1 3LR</postCode>`

Example	`<postCode>60142-7</postCode>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <textNode/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element postCode { att.global.attributes, text }`

9.1.59. <profileDesc>

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.teiHeaderPart
Contained by	**header:** teiHeader
May contain	**corpus:** particDesc **header:** correspDesc creation langUsage textClass **transcr:** handNotes listTranspose
Note	Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are documenting multiple texts.

Example	`<profileDesc>`
	` <langUsage>`
	`  <language ident="fr">French</language>`
	` </langUsage>`
	` <textDesc n="novel">`
	`  <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>`
	`  <constitution type="single"/>`
	`  <derivation type="original"/>`
	`  <domain type="art"/>`
	`  <factuality type="fiction"/>`
	`  <interaction type="none"/>`
	`  <preparedness type="prepared"/>`
	`  <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>`
	`  <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>`
	` </textDesc>`
	` <settingDesc>`
	`  <setting>`
	`  <name>Paris, France</name>`
	`  <time>Late 19th century</time>`
	`  </setting>`
	` </settingDesc>`
	`</profileDesc>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <classRef key="model.profileDescPart"`
	`  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element profileDesc { att.global.attributes, model.profileDescPart* }`

9.1.60. <ptr>

<ptr> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 16.1. Links]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.cReferencing (@cRef) att.declaring (@decls) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.internetMedia (@mimeType) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of	model.ptrLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s span **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode creation handNote language licence publicationStmt **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country org orgName persName person roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore transpose
May contain	Empty element

Example	`<ptr target="#p143 #p144"/>`
	`<ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/>`
	`<ptr cRef="1.3.4"/>`

Schematron	<s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on <s:name/>.</s:report>

Content model	`<content>`
	` <empty/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element ptr`
	`{`
	`  att.cReferencing.attributes,`
	`  att.declaring.attributes,`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.internetMedia.attributes,`
	`  att.pointing.attributes,`
	`  att.typed.attributes,`
	`  empty`
	`}`

9.1.61. <pubPlace>

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))
Member of	model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	**header:** publicationStmt
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data

Example	`<publicationStmt>`
	` <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>`
	` <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>`
	` <date>1989</date>`
	`</publicationStmt>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element pubPlace`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.naming.attributes,`
	`  macro.phraseSeq`
	`}`

9.1.62. <publicationStmt>

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	**header:** fileDesc
May contain	**core:** address date p ptr pubPlace publisher ref **header:** availability idno **linking:** ab
Note	Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmtPart.agency or model.publicationStmtPart.detail classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.

Example	`<publicationStmt>`
	`<publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher>`
	`<pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>`
	`<date when="1846"/>`
	`</publicationStmt>`

Example	`<publicationStmt>`
	`<publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>`
	`<pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>`
	`<availability>`
	`<p>Available under licence only</p>`
	`</availability>`
	`<date when="1992">1992</date>`
	`</publicationStmt>`

Example	`<publicationStmt>`
	`<publisher>Zea Books</publisher>`
	`<pubPlace>Lincoln, NE</pubPlace>`
	`<date>2017</date>`
	`<availability>`
	`<p>This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license.</p>`
	`</availability>`
	`<ptr target="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/>`
	`</publicationStmt>`

Content model	`<content>`
	`<alternate>`
	`<sequence minOccurs="1"`
	`maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`<classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/>`
	`<classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail"`
	`minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`</sequence>`
	`<classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"`
	`maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`</alternate>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element publicationStmt`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  (`
	`  ( model.publicationStmtPart.agency, model.publicationStmtPart.detail* )+`
	`  | model.pLike+`
	`  )`
	`}`

9.1.63. <publisher>

<**publisher**> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)
Member of	model.publicationStmtPart.agency
Contained by	**header:** publicationStmt
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

Example	`<imprint>`
	`<pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>`
	`<publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>`
	`<date>1987</date>`
	`</imprint>`

Content model	`<content>`
	`<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element publisher`
	`{`
	`att.global.attributes,`
	`att.canonical.attributes,`
	`macro.phraseSeq`
	`}`

9.1.64. <q>

<**q**> (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [3.3.3. Quotation]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ascribed.directed (@toWhom) (att.ascribed (@who)) type (type) may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Suggested values include:** **spoken** (spoken) representation of speech

	thought (thought) representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue **written** (written) quotation from a written source **so-called** (so called) authorial distance **foreign** (foreign) **distinct** (distinct) linguistically distinct **term** technical term **emph** (emph) rhetorically emphasized **mentioned** (mentioned) refering to itself, not its normal referent
Member of	model.common model.hiLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl m phr s span w **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode creation handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **textstructure:** body div **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp p pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of *rend* that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.
Example	`It is spelled <q>Tübingen</q> — to enter the letter <q>u</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press <q>0 0 f c</q>`
Content model	`<content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content>`
Schema Declaration	`element q { att.global.attributes, att.ascribed.directed.attributes, attribute type { "spoken" | "thought" | "written"`

```
    | "soCalled"
    | "foreign"
    | "distinct"
    | "term"
    | "emph"
    | "mentioned"
   }?,
   macro.specialPara
}
```

9.1.65. <quote>

<**quote**> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.msExcerpt (@defective) att.notated (@notation)
Member of	model.quoteLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s **core:** add del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change handNote licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **textstructure:** body div **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp p pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the `<cit>` element.
Example	`Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his slogan, <quote>You shall know a word by the company it keeps</quote> <ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>`
Content model	`<content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content>`
Schema Declaration	`element quote { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.msExcerpt.attributes, att.notated.attributes, macro.specialPara }`

9.1.66. <rdg>

<**rdg**> (reading) contains a single reading within a textual variation. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	
Module	textcrit

Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.textCritical (@type, @cause, @varSeq, @require) (att.written (@hand)) att.witnessed (@wit)
Member of	model.rdgLike
Contained by	**textcrit:** app
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp p pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **textstructure:** div **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Example	`<rdg wit="#Ra2">Eryment</rdg>`
Content model	`<content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.divLike"/> <classRef key="model.divPart"/> <elementRef key="titlePage"/> <elementRef key="argument"/> <elementRef key="byline"/> <elementRef key="docAuthor"/> <elementRef key="docDate"/> <elementRef key="docEdition"/> <elementRef key="docImprint"/> <elementRef key="docTitle"/> <elementRef key="epigraph"/> <elementRef key="imprimatur"/> <elementRef key="titlePart"/> <elementRef key="epilogue"/> <elementRef key="performance"/> <elementRef key="prologue"/> <elementRef key="set"/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.inter"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> <classRef key="model.rdgPart"/> </alternate> </content>`
Schema Declaration	`element rdg { att.global.attributes, att.textCritical.attributes, att.witnessed.attributes, (text	model.divLike	model.divPart	titlePage	argument	byline	docAuthor	docDate	docEdition	docImprint	docTitle	epigraph	imprimatur	titlePart	epilogue	performance	prologue	set`

		model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global | model.rdgPart)* }

9.1.67. <ref>

<**ref**> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 16.1. Links]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.cReferencing (@cRef) att.declaring (@decls) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.internetMedia (@mimeType) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.ptrLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s span **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode creation handNote language licence publicationStmt **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	The *target* and *cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive.
Example	`See especially <ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second sentence</ref>`
Example	`See also <ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term></ref>.`
Schematron	<s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report>

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element ref`
	`{`
	`  att.cReferencing.attributes,`
	`  att.declaring.attributes,`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.internetMedia.attributes,`
	`  att.pointing.attributes,`
	`  att.typed.attributes,`
	`  macro.paraContent`
	`}`

9.1.68. <restore>

<restore> (restore) indicates restoration of text to an earlier state by cancellation of an editorial or authorial marking or instruction. [11.3.1.6. Cancellation of Deletions and Other Markings]	
Module	transcr
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)) (att.written (@hand)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
Member of	model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	**analysis:** cl pc phr s w **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change handNote licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	On this element, the *type* attribute categorizes the way that the cancelled intervention has been indicated in some way, for example by means of a marginal note, over-inking, additional markup, etc.

Example	`For I hate this`
	`<restore hand="#dhl"`
	`type="marginalStetNote">`
	`<del>my</del>`
	`</restore> body`

Content model	`<content>`
	`<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element restore`
	`{`
	`att.global.attributes,`
	`att.transcriptional.attributes,`
	`att.typed.attributes,`
	`att.dimensions.attributes,`
	`macro.paraContent`
	`}`

9.1.69. <revisionDesc>

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs

	(@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.docStatus (@status)
Contained by	**header:** teiHeader
May contain	**header:** change
Note	If present on this element, the *status* attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally <change> elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

Example	`<revisionDesc status="embargoed">`
	` <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>`
	`</revisionDesc>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <alternate>`
	`  <elementRef key="list"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="listChange"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="change" minOccurs="1"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	` </alternate>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element revisionDesc`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.docStatus.attributes,`
	`  ( list | listChange | change+ )`
	`}`

9.1.70. <roleName>

<roleName> (role name) contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.persNamePart
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s span **core:** add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode correspAction creation handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country org orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	A <roleName> may be distinguished from an `<addName>` by virtue of the fact that, like a title, it typically exists independently of its holder.

Example	`<persName>`
	` <forename>William</forename>`
	` <surname>Poulteny</surname>`
	` <roleName>Earl of Bath</roleName>`
	`</persName>`

Example	`<p>The <roleName role="#solicitor_general">S.G.</roleName> is the only national public official,` ` including the Supreme Court justices, required by statute to be “learned in the law.”</p>`

Example	`<p>`
	` <persName ref="#NJF">`
	`  <roleName role="#solicitor_general">Solicitor General</roleName> Noel J. Francisco</persName>,`
	` representing the administration, asserted in rebuttal that there was nothing to disavow (...)`
	`<persName ref="#NJF">Francisco</persName> had violated the scrupulous standard of candor about the facts and`
	` the law that <roleName role="#solicitor_general">S.G.s</roleName>, in Republican and Democratic administration`
	` alike, have repeatedly said they must honor.`
	`</p>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element roleName`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.personal.attributes,`
	`  att.typed.attributes,`
	`  macro.phraseSeq`
	`}`

9.1.71. <rs>

<rs> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [13.2.1. Personal Names 3.6.1. Referring Strings]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.nameLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s span **core:** add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode correspAction creation handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country org orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data

Example	`<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said <rs type="person">his lady</rs>`
	` to him one day,`
	`<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at`
	` last?</q>`

Content model	`<content>` ` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`

	`</content>`
Schema Declaration	`element rs { att.global.attributes, att.naming.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }`

9.1.72. <s>

<s> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories 8.4.1. Segmentation]	
Module	analysis
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.notated (@notation)
Member of	model.segLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change handNote licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	The <s> element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the <seg> should be used instead. The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation intended, according to any convenient typology.
Example	`<head> <s>A short affair</s> </head> <s>When are you leaving?</s> <s>Tomorrow.</s>`
Schematron	<s:report test="tei:s">You may not nest one s element within another: use seg instead</s:report>
Content model	`<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content>`
Schema Declaration	`element s { att.global.attributes, att.segLike.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.notated.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }`

9.1.73. <seg>

<**seg**> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the 'chunk' level. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 6.2. Components of the Verse Line 7.2.5. Speech Contents]	
Module	linking
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand) att.notated (@notation)
Member of	model.segLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl m phr s w **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change handNote licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	The <seg> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a <ptr> or other similar element.
Example	`<seg>When are you leaving?</seg>` `<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>`

Example	`<s>`
	` <seg rend="caps" type="initial-cap">So father's only</seg> glory was the ballfield.`
	`</s>`

Example	`<seg type="preamble">`
	` <seg>Sigmund, <seg type="patronym">the son of Volsung</seg>, was a king in Frankish country.</seg>`
	` <seg>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg>`
	` <seg>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </seg>`
	`</seg>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element seg`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.segLike.attributes,`
	`  att.typed.attributes,`
	`  att.written.attributes,`
	`  att.notated.attributes,`
	`  macro.paraContent`
	`}`

9.1.74. <seriesStmt>

<**seriesStmt**> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [2.2.5. The Series Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)
Contained by	**header:** fileDesc
May contain	**core:** editor p title **header:** idno **linking:** ab
Example	<seriesStmt> <title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</title> <respStmt> <resp>ed. by</resp> <name>Jan Gonda</name> </respStmt> <biblScope unit="volume">1.2</biblScope> <idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno> </seriesStmt>
Content model	<content> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <sequence> <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="editor"/> <elementRef key="respStmt"/> </alternate> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <elementRef key="idno"/> <elementRef key="biblScope"/> </alternate> </sequence> </alternate> </content>

Schema Declaration	element seriesStmt
	{
	att.global.attributes,
	att.declarable.attributes,
	(model.pLike+ | (title+, (editor | respStmt)*, (idno | biblScope)*))
	}

9.1.75. <settlement>

<settlement> (settlement) contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-political or administrative unit. [13.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	namesdates
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Member of	model.placeNamePart
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s span **core:** add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode correspAction creation handNote language licence

	linking: ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country org orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data

Example	`<placeName>`
	` <settlement type="town">Glasgow</settlement>`
	` <region>Scotland</region>`
	`</placeName>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element settlement`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.naming.attributes,`
	`  att.typed.attributes,`
	`  att.datable.attributes,`
	`  macro.phraseSeq`
	`}`

9.1.76. <sourceDesc>

<sourceDesc> (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7. The Source Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)
Contained by	**header:** fileDesc
May contain	**core:** p **linking:** ab **namesdates:** listOrg listPerson **textcrit:** listWit

Example	`<sourceDesc>`
	` <bibl>`
	`  <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In`
	` <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.`
	` <publisher>OUP</publisher>`
	`  <date>1968</date>. </bibl>`
	`</sourceDesc>`

Example	`<sourceDesc>`
	` <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>`
	`</sourceDesc>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <alternate>`
	`  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`  <alternate minOccurs="1"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>`

```
   <classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
  </alternate>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element sourceDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   (
      model.pLike+
    | ( model.biblLike | model.sourceDescPart | model.listLike )+
   )
}
```

*9.1.77. *

**** associates an interpretative annotation directly with a span of text. [17.3. Spans and Interpretations]

Module: analysis

Attributes

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.interpLike (@inst) att.typed (type, @subtype)

type — indicates what kind of phenomenon is being noted in the passage.

- **Status** Recommended
- **Datatype** teidata.enumerated
- **Sample values include:**
  - **image** identifies an image in the passage.
  - **character** identifies a character associated with the passage.
  - **theme** identifies a theme in the passage.
  - **allusion** identifies an allusion to another text.

from — gives the identifier of the node which is the starting point of the span of text being annotated; if not accompanied by a *to* attribute, gives the identifier of the node of the entire span of text being annotated.

- **Status** Optional
- **Datatype** teidata.pointer

to — gives the identifier of the node which is the end-point of the span of text being annotated.

- **Status** Optional
- **Datatype** teidata.pointer

Member of: model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: cl m phr s span spanGrp w
core: add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title
header: change classCode handNote language licence
linking: ab seg
msdescription: accMat objectType stamp
namesdates: country orgName persName person roleName settlement
textcrit: lem rdg
textstructure: body div text

	transcr: metamark restore surface surfaceGrp
May contain	**analysis:** interp interpGrp span spanGrp **core:** address date gap hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q ref rs term title **header:** idno **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark subst character data

Example	`<p xml:id="para2">(The "aftermath" starts here)</p>`
	`<p xml:id="para3">(The "aftermath" continues here)</p>`
	`<p xml:id="para4">(The "aftermath" ends in this paragraph)</p>`
	`<!-- ... -->`
	`<span type="structure" from="#para2"`
	`to="#para4">aftermath</span>`

Schematron	<s:report test="@from and @target">Only one of the attributes @target and @from may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report>
Schematron	<s:report test="@to and @target">Only one of the attributes @target and @to may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report>
Schematron	<s:report test="@to and not(@from)">If @to is supplied on <s:name/>, @from must be supplied as well</s:report>
Schematron	<s:report test="contains(normalize-space(@to),' ') or contains(normalize-space(@from),' ')">The attributes @to and @from on <s:name/> may each contain only a single value</s:report>

Content model	`<content>`
	`<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element span`
	`{`
	`att.global.attributes,`
	`att.interpLike.attribute.inst,`
	`att.typed.attribute.subtype,`
	`att.pointing.attributes,`
	`attribute type { text }?,`
	`attribute from { text }?,`
	`attribute to { text }?,`
	`macro.phraseSeq.limited`
	`}`

9.1.78. <spanGrp>

<spanGrp> (span group) collects together span tags. [17.3. Spans and Interpretations]	
Module	analysis
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.interpLike (@inst) att.typed (type, @subtype) type — indicates what kind of phenomenon is being noted in the passage. **Status** Recommended **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Sample values include:** **image** identifies an image in the passage. **character** identifies a character associated with the passage. **theme** identifies a theme in the passage.

	allusion identifies an allusion to another text.
Member of	model.global.meta
Contained by	**analysis:** cl m phr s span w **core:** add address date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName person roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **textstructure:** body div text **transcr:** metamark restore surface surfaceGrp
May contain	**analysis:** span

Example	`<u xml:id="UU1">Can I have ten oranges and a kilo of bananas please?</u>`
	`<u xml:id="UU2">Yes, anything else?</u>`
	`<u xml:id="UU3">No thanks.</u>`
	`<u xml:id="UU4">That'll be dollar forty.</u>`
	`<u xml:id="UU5">Two dollars</u>`
	`<u xml:id="UU6">Sixty, eighty, two dollars.`
	`<anchor xml:id="UU6e"/>Thank you.<anchor xml:id="UU6f"/>`
	`</u>`
	`<spanGrp type="transactions">`
	` <span from="#UU1">sale request</span>`
	` <span from="#UU2" to="#UU3">sale compliance</span>`
	` <span from="#UU4">sale</span>`
	` <span from="#UU5" to="#UU6">purchase</span>`
	` <span from="#UU6e" to="#UU6f">purchase closure</span>`
	`</spanGrp>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <sequence>`
	`  <classRef key="model.descLike"`
	`  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="span" minOccurs="0"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	` </sequence>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element spanGrp`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.interpLike.attribute.inst,`
	`  att.typed.attribute.subtype,`
	`  attribute type { text }?,`
	`  ( model.descLike*, span* )`
	`}`

9.1.79. <stamp>

<stamp> (stamp) contains a word or phrase describing a stamp or similar device. [10.3.3. Watermarks and Stamps]	
Module	msdescription
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Member of	model.pPart.msdesc
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s span **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode creation handNote language licence

	linking: ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data

Example	`<rubric>Apologyticu TTVLLIANI AC IGNORATIA IN XPO IHV<lb/>`
	` SI NON LICET<lb/>`
	` NOBIS RO<lb/>`
	` manii imperii <stamp>Bodleian stamp</stamp>`
	` <lb/>`
	`</rubric>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element stamp`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.typed.attributes,`
	`  att.datable.attributes,`
	`  macro.phraseSeq`
	`}`

9.1.80. <street>

<street> contains a full street address including any name or number identifying a building as well as the name of the street or route on which it is located. [3.6.2. Addresses]	
Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.addrPart
Contained by	**core:** address
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	The order and presentation of house names and numbers and street names, etc., may vary considerably in different countries. The encoding should reflect the order which is appropriate in the country concerned.
Example	`<street>via della Faggiola, 36</street>`
Example	`<street>` ` <name>Duntaggin</name>, 110 Southmoor Road`

	`</street>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element street { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }`

9.1.81. <subst>

<subst> (substitution) groups one or more deletions (or surplus text) with one or more additions when the combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text. [11.3.1.5. Substitutions]	
Module	transcr
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)) (att.written (@hand)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
Member of	model.pPart.editorial
Contained by	**analysis:** cl pc phr s span w **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode creation handNote language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**core:** add del lb pb

Example	`... are all included. <del hand="#RG">It is</del>`
	`<subst>`
	` <add>T</add>`
	` <del>t</del>`
	`</subst>he expressed`

Example	` that he and his Sister Mi#s D – <lb/>who always lived with him, wd. be <subst>`
	` <del>very</del>`
	` <lb/>`
	` <add>principally</add>`
	`</subst> remembered in her Will.`

Example	`<ab>#<subst>`
	`  <add place="above">##</add>`
	`  <del>#</del>`
	` </subst>`
	` #########<subst>`
	`  <add place="above">##</add>`
	`  <del>#</del>`
	` </subst>`
	` #########<subst>`
	`  <add place="above">##</add>`
	`  <del>#</del>`
	` </subst>`
	`</ab>`

Example	`<subst>`
	` <del>`
	`  <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5"`
	`  unit="character"/>`
	` </del>`
	` <add>apple</add>`
	`</subst>`

Schematron	<s:assert test="child::tei:add and (child::tei:del or child::tei:surplus)"> <s:name/> must have at least one child add and at least one child del or surplus</s:assert>

Content model	`<content>`
	` <alternate minOccurs="1"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <elementRef key="add"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="surplus"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="del"/>`

```
  <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element subst
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.transcriptional.attributes,
   att.dimensions.attributes,
   ( add | surplus | del | model.milestoneLike )+
}
```

9.1.82. <surface>

<surface> defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and transcriptions of the writing within them. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

Module: transcr

Attributes: Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.coordinated (@start, @ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry, @points) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

- attachment — describes the method by which this surface is or was connected to the main surface
  - **Status**: Optional
  - **Datatype**: teidata.enumerated
  - **Sample values include:**
    - **glued** — glued in place
    - **pinned** — pinned or stapled in place
    - **sewn** — sewn in place
- flipping — indicates whether the surface is attached and folded in such a way as to provide two writing surfaces
  - **Status**: Optional
  - **Datatype**: teidata.truthValue

Contained by: **transcr:** facsimile surface surfaceGrp

May contain:
analysis: interp interpGrp span spanGrp
core: gap graphic lb note noteGrp pb
textcrit: app
transcr: listTranspose metamark surface surfaceGrp

Note: The <surface> element represents any two-dimensional space on some physical surface forming part of the source material, such as a piece of paper, a face of a monument, a billboard, a scroll, a leaf etc.
The coordinate space defined by this element may be thought of as a grid *lrx* - *ulx* units wide and *uly* - *lry* units high.
The <surface> element may contain graphic representations or transcriptions of written zones, or both. The coordinate values used by every <zone> element contained by this element are to be understood with reference to the same grid.
Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> element.

Example

```
<facsimile>
 <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300">
  <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
 </surface>
</facsimile>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
```

```
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <alternate>
    <elementRef key="zone"/>
    <elementRef key="line"/>
    <elementRef key="path"/>
    <elementRef key="surface"/>
    <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>
   </alternate>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element surface
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.coordinated.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute attachment { text }?,
   attribute flipping { text }?,
   (
      ( model.global | model.labelLike | model.graphicLike )*,
      ( ( zone | line | path | surface | surfaceGrp ), model.global* )*
   )
}
```

9.1.83. <surfaceGrp>

<surfaceGrp> defines any kind of useful grouping of written surfaces, for example the recto and verso of a single leaf, which the encoder wishes to treat as a single unit. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module	transcr
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Contained by	**transcr:** facsimile surface surfaceGrp
May contain	**analysis:** interp interpGrp span spanGrp **core:** gap lb note noteGrp pb **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark surface surfaceGrp
Note	Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> elements.

Example

```
<sourceDoc>
 <surfaceGrp>
  <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200"
   lry="300">
   <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
  </surface>
  <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200"
   lry="300">
   <graphic url="Bovelles-49v.png"/>
  </surface>
 </surfaceGrp>
</sourceDoc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <elementRef key="surface"/>
  <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element surfaceGrp
```

```
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   ( model.global | surface | surfaceGrp )+
}
```

9.1.84. <teiHeader>

<teiHeader> (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	**textstructure:** TEI
May contain	**header:** encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc
Note	One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.
Example	

```
<teiHeader>
 <fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
   <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
   <author>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</author>
   <respStmt>
    <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
    <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
   </respStmt>
   <respStmt>
    <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
    <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
   </respStmt>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
   <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
   <address>
    <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
   </address>
   <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
   <availability>
    <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
   </availability>
   <date when="1968">1968</date>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
   <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile,
       1968)</bibl>
  </sourceDesc>
 </fileDesc>
 <encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
   <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling
       concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the
       editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>
  </projectDesc>
  <editorialDecl>
   <correction>
    <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
   </correction>
   <normalization>
    <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured
        forms are not encoded.</p>
   </normalization>
  </editorialDecl>
  <refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
   <cRefPattern matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]+)\.(.*)"
    replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']//lb[@n='$3'])">
    <p>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that
        listed here: <list>
      <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
      </item>
      <item>a period</item>
      <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
      </item>
      <item>a space</item>
      <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
      </item>
     </list>
    </p>
```

```
   </cRefPattern>
  </refsDecl>
 </encodingDesc>
 <revisionDesc>
  <list>
   <item>
    <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
   <item>
    <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
  </list>
 </revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>
  <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="revisionDesc"
   minOccurs="0"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element teiHeader
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )
}
```

9.1.85. <term>

<**term**> (term) contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.4.1. Terms and Glosses]

Module	core
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.cReferencing (@cRef)
Member of	model.emphLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s span **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode creation handNote keywords language licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data
Note	When this element appears within an `<index>` element, it is understood to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for that location. Elsewhere, it is understood simply to indicate that its content is to be regarded as a technical or specialised term. It may be associated with a `<gloss>` element by means of its *ref* attribute; alternatively a `<gloss>` element may point to a <term> element by means of its *target* attribute. In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological

	units. The <term> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <term> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion. As with other members of the att.canonical class, instances of this element occuring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the *ref* attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the *key* attribute). Because the mutually exclusive *target* and *cRef* attributes overlap with the function of the *ref* attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.
Example	`A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a <term>parser</term>, and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.`
Example	`We may define <term xml:id="TDPV1" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as <gloss target="#TDPV1">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>`
Example	`We may define <term ref="#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as <gloss xml:id="TDPV2">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>`
Example	`We discuss Leech's concept of <term ref="myGlossary.xml#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> below.`
Content model	`<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content>`
Schema Declaration	`element term { att.global.attributes, att.declaring.attributes, att.pointing.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.canonical.attributes, att.sortable.attributes, att.cReferencing.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }`

9.1.86. <text>

<text> (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]	
Module	textstructure
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.resource
Contained by	**textstructure:** TEI
May contain	**analysis:** interp interpGrp span spanGrp **core:** gap lb note noteGrp pb **textcrit:** app **textstructure:** body **transcr:** listTranspose metamark
Note	This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the `<floatingText>` is provided for this purpose.
Example	`<text> <front> <docTitle> <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart> </docTitle> </front> <body> <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l> <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l> </body>`

	`</text>`

Example	The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:
	`<text>`
	` <front>`
	`<!-- front matter for the whole group -->`
	` </front>`
	` <group>`
	`  <text>`
	`<!-- first text -->`
	`  </text>`
	`  <text>`
	`<!-- second text -->`
	`  </text>`
	` </group>`
	`</text>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <sequence>`
	`  <classRef key="model.global"`
	`  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`  <sequence minOccurs="0">`
	`  <elementRef key="front"/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.global"`
	`  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`  </sequence>`
	`  <alternate>`
	`  <elementRef key="body"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="group"/>`
	`  </alternate>`
	`  <classRef key="model.global"`
	`  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`  <sequence minOccurs="0">`
	`  <elementRef key="back"/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.global"`
	`  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`  </sequence>`
	` </sequence>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element text`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.declaring.attributes,`
	`  att.typed.attributes,`
	`  att.written.attributes,`
	`  (`
	`  model.global*,`
	`  ( front, model.global* )?,`
	`  ( body | group ),`
	`  model.global*,`
	`  ( back, model.global* )?`
	`  )`
	`}`

9.1.87. <textClass>

<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)
Member of	model.profileDescPart
Contained by	**header:** profileDesc
May contain	**header:** classCode keywords

Example	`<taxonomy>`
	` <category xml:id="acprose">`
	`  <catDesc>Academic prose</catDesc>`
	` </category>`
	`<!-- other categories here -->`
	`</taxonomy>`
	`<!-- ... -->`
	`<textClass>`
	` <catRef target="#acprose"/>`

```
 <classCode scheme="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</classCode>
 <keywords scheme="http://authorities.loc.gov">
  <list>
   <item>End of the world</item>
   <item>History - philosophy</item>
  </list>
 </keywords>
</textClass>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="classCode"/>
  <elementRef key="catRef"/>
  <elementRef key="keywords"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element textClass
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.declarable.attributes,
   ( classCode | catRef | keywords )*
}
```

9.1.88. <title>

<title> (title) contains a title for any kind of work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

Module: core

Attributes: Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (type, @subtype)

type — classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

- **Derived from**: att.typed
- **Status**: Optional
- **Datatype**: teidata.enumerated
- **Sample values include:**
  - **main** — main title
  - **sub** — (subordinate) subtitle, title of part
  - **alt** — (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known
  - **short** — abbreviated form of title
  - **desc** — (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title
- **Note**: This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element.

	level	indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Legal values are:** **a** (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item. **m** (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works **j** (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper **s** (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection **u** (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press) **Note** The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an `<analytic>` element is *ipso facto* of level 'a', and one appearing within a `<series>` element of level 's'. For this reason, the *level* attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.
Member of	model.emphLike	
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s span **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change classCode creation handNote language licence seriesStmt titleStmt **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg witness **transcr:** metamark restore	
May contain	**analysis:** c cl interp interpGrp m pc phr s span spanGrp w **core:** add address date del gap graphic hi lb name note noteGrp pb ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **linking:** seg **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** app listWit **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data	
Note	The attributes *key* and *ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.	
Example	`<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,`	

	18–21 July 1989</title>
Example	<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable edition</title>
Example	<title type="full"> <title type="main">Synthèse</title> <title type="sub">an international journal for epistemology, methodology and history of science</title> </title>
Content model	<content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content>

Schema Declaration	element title
	{
	att.global.attributes,
	att.typed.attribute.subtype,
	att.canonical.attributes,
	att.datable.attributes,
	attribute type { text }?,
	attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
	macro.paraContent
	}

9.1.89. <titleStmt>

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2. The File Description]	
Module	header
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	**header:** fileDesc
May contain	**core:** editor title
Example	<titleStmt> <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription</title> <respStmt> <resp>compiled by</resp> <name>P.J. Lucas</name> </respStmt> </titleStmt>
Content model	<content> <sequence> <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <classRef key="model.respLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </content>
Schema Declaration	element titleStmt { att.global.attributes, (title+, model.respLike*) }

9.1.90. <transpose>

<transpose> describes a single textual transposition as an ordered list of at least two pointers specifying the order in which the elements indicated should be re-combined. [11.3.4.5. Transpositions]	
Module	transcr
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	**transcr:** listTranspose

May contain	**core:** ptr
Note	Transposition is usually indicated in a document by a metamark such as a wavy line or numbering. The order in which <ptr> elements appear within a <transpose> element should correspond with the desired order, as indicated by the metamark.

Example	`<transpose>`
	`<ptr target="#ib02"/>`
	`<ptr target="#ib01"/>`
	`</transpose>`
	The transposition recorded here indicates that the content of the element with identifier `ib02` should appear before the content of the element with identifier `ib01`.

Content model	`<content>`
	`<elementRef key="ptr" minOccurs="2"`
	`maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element transpose { att.global.attributes, ( ptr, ptr, ptr* ) }`

9.1.91. <variantEncoding>

<variantEncoding> (variant encoding) declares the method used to encode text-critical variants. [12.1.1. The Apparatus Entry]

Module	textcrit
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) method — indicates which method is used to encode the apparatus of variants. **Status:** Required **Datatype:** teidata.enumerated **Legal values are:** **location-referenced** — apparatus uses line numbers or other canonical reference scheme referenced in a base text.; **double-end-point** — indicates the precise locations of the beginning and ending of each lemma relative to a base text.; **parallel-segmentation** — alternate readings of a passage are given in parallel in the text; no notion of a base text is necessary. **Note:** The value ‘parallel-segmentation’ requires in-line encoding of the apparatus. location — indicates whether the apparatus appears within the running text or external to it. **Status:** Required **Datatype:** teidata.enumerated **Schematron:** <sch:rule context="tei:variantEncoding"> <sch:assert test="(@location != 'external') or (@method != 'parallel-segmentation')"> The @location value "external" is

	inconsistent with the parallel-segmentation method of apparatus markup.</sch:assert> </sch:rule> **Legal values are:** **internal** apparatus appears within the running text. **external** apparatus appears outside the base text. **Note** The value ‘external’ is inconsistent with the parallel-segmentation method of apparatus markup.
Member of	model.encodingDescPart
Contained by	**header:** encodingDesc
May contain	Empty element
Example	`<variantEncoding method="location-referenced" location="external"/>`
Content model	`<content> <empty/> </content>`
Schema Declaration	`element variantEncoding { att.global.attributes, attribute method { "location-referenced" | "double-end-point" | "parallel-segmentation" }, attribute location { "internal" | "external" }, empty }`

9.1.92. <w>

<w> (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories 17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation]	
Module	analysis
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.linguistic (@lemma, @lemmaRef, @pos, @msd, @join) (att.lexicographic.normalized (@norm, @orig)) att.notated (@notation)
Member of	model.segLike
Contained by	**analysis:** cl phr s w **core:** add date del editor hi name note p pubPlace publisher q quote ref rs street term title **header:** change handNote licence **linking:** ab seg **msdescription:** accMat objectType stamp **namesdates:** country orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** lem rdg **transcr:** metamark restore
May contain	**analysis:** c interp interpGrp m pc span spanGrp w **core:** add del gap hi lb note noteGrp pb q **linking:** seg **textcrit:** app **transcr:** listTranspose metamark restore subst character data

Example

This example is adapted from the Folger Library's Early Modern English Drama version of The Wits: a Comedy by William Davenant.

```
<l>
 <w lemma="it" pos="pn"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0100">IT</w>
 <w lemma="have" pos="vvz"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0110">hath</w>
 <w lemma="be" pos="vvn"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0120">been</w>
 <w lemma="say" pos="vvn"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0130">said</w>
 <w lemma="of" pos="acp-p"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0140">of</w>
 <w lemma="old" pos="j"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0150">old</w>
 <pc xml:id="A19883-003-a-0160">,</pc>
 <w lemma="that" pos="cs"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0170">that</w>
 <w lemma="play" pos="vvz"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0180">
  <choice>
   <orig>Playes</orig>
   <reg>Plays</reg>
  </choice>
 </w>
 <w lemma="be" pos="vvb"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0190">are</w>
 <w lemma="feast" pos="n2"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0200">Feasts</w>
 <pc xml:id="A19883-003-a-0210">,</pc>
</l>
<l xml:id="A19883-e100220">
 <w lemma="poet" pos="n2"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0220">Poets</w>
 <w lemma="the" pos="d"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0230">the</w>
 <w lemma="cook" pos="n2"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0240">
  <choice>
   <orig>Cookes</orig>
   <reg>Cooks</reg>
  </choice>
 </w>
 <pc xml:id="A19883-003-a-0250">,</pc>
 <w lemma="and" pos="cc"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0260">and</w>
 <w lemma="the" pos="d"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0270">the</w>
 <w lemma="spectator" pos="n2"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0280">Spectators</w>
 <w lemma="guest" pos="n2"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0290">Guests</w>
 <pc xml:id="A19883-003-a-0300">,</pc>
</l>
<l xml:id="A19883-e100230">
 <w lemma="the" pos="d"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0310">The</w>
 <w lemma="actor" pos="n2"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0320">Actors</w>
 <w lemma="waiter" pos="n2"
  xml:id="A19883-003-a-0330">Waiters</w>
 <pc xml:id="A19883-003-a-0340">:</pc>
<!-- ... -->
</l>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <elementRef key="seg"/>
  <elementRef key="w"/>
  <elementRef key="m"/>
  <elementRef key="c"/>
  <elementRef key="pc"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.lPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element w
{
   att.global.attributes,
```

```
   att.segLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.linguistic.attributes,
   att.notated.attributes,
   (
      text
    | model.gLike
    | seg
    | w
    | m
    | c
    | pc
    | model.global
    | model.lPart
    | model.hiLike
    | model.pPart.edit
   )*
}
```

9.1.93. <witness>

<witness> (witness) contains either a description of a single witness referred to within the critical apparatus, or a list of witnesses which is to be referred to by a single sigil. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	
Module	textcrit
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey)
Contained by	**textcrit:** listWit
May contain	**core:** address date hi name note ptr q quote ref rs term title **header:** idno **msdescription:** objectType stamp **namesdates:** country listOrg listPerson orgName persName roleName settlement **textcrit:** listWit **transcr:** subst character data
Note	The content of the <witness> element may give bibliographic information about the witness or witness group, or it may be empty.

Example	`<listWit>`
	` <witness xml:id="EL">Ellesmere, Huntingdon Library 26.C.9</witness>`
	` <witness xml:id="HG">Hengwrt, National Library of Wales,`
	`  Aberystwyth, Peniarth 392D</witness>`
	` <witness xml:id="RA2">Bodleian Library Rawlinson Poetic 149`
	`  (see further <ptr target="http://www.examples.com/MSdescs#MSRP149"/>)</witness>`
	`</listWit>`

Content model	`<content>`
	` <alternate minOccurs="0"`
	`  maxOccurs="unbounded">`
	`  <textNode/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>`
	`  <classRef key="model.inter"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="note"/>`
	`  <elementRef key="object"/>`
	` </alternate>`
	`</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element witness`
	`{`
	`  att.global.attributes,`
	`  att.sortable.attributes,`
	`  ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter | note | object )*`
	`}`

9.2. Model classes

9.2.1. model.addrPart

model.addrPart groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.6.2. Addresses]	
Module	tei

Used by	address
Members	model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[roleName] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno rs] postCode street

9.2.2. model.addressLike

model.addressLike groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [1. The TEI Infrastructure]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data
Members	address

9.2.3. model.attributable

model.attributable groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.2. Floating Texts]	
Module	tei
Used by	macro.phraseSeq model.inter
Members	model.quoteLike[quote]

9.2.4. model.availabilityPart

model.availabilityPart groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei
Used by	availability
Members	licence

9.2.5. model.common

model.common groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	body div
Members	model.divPart[model.lLike model.pLike[ab p]] model.inter[model.attributable[model.quoteLike[quote]] model.biblLike model.egLike model.labelLike model.listLike[listOrg listPerson listWit] model.oddDecl model.stageLike] q
Note	This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

9.2.6. model.correspActionPart

model.correspActionPart groups elements which define the parts (usually names, dates and places) of one action related to the correspondence.	
Module	tei
Used by	correspAction
Members	model.addressLike[address] model.dateLike[date] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[roleName] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno rs] note noteGrp

9.2.7. model.correspDescPart

model.correspDescPart groups together metadata elements for describing correspondence	
Module	tei
Used by	correspDesc
Members	correspAction note noteGrp

9.2.8. model.dateLike

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data
Members	date

9.2.9. model.divBottom

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei
Used by	body div
Members	model.divBottomPart model.divWrapper

9.2.10. model.divLike

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.	
Module	tei
Used by	body div lem rdg
Members	div

9.2.11. model.divPart

model.divPart groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	lem macro.specialPara model.common rdg
Members	model.lLike model.pLike[ab p]
Note	Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

9.2.12. model.divTop

model.divTop groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei
Used by	body div
Members	model.divTopPart[model.headLike] model.divWrapper

9.2.13. model.divTopPart

model.divTopPart groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.divTop
Members	model.headLike

9.2.14. model.emphLike

model.emphLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase
Members	term title

9.2.15. model.encodingDescPart

model.encodingDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.

Module	tei
Used by	encodingDesc
Members	variantEncoding

9.2.16. model.global

model.global groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	address body date div lem m macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara person rdg surface surfaceGrp text w
Members	model.global.edit[app gap] model.global.meta[interp interpGrp listTranspose span spanGrp] model.milestoneLike[lb pb] model.noteLike[note noteGrp] metamark

9.2.17. model.global.edit

model.global.edit groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.global
Members	app gap

9.2.18. model.global.meta

model.global.meta groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.global
Members	interp interpGrp listTranspose span spanGrp
Note	Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same divison as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text.

9.2.19. model.graphicLike

model.graphicLike groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components]	
Module	tei
Used by	facsimile model.phrase surface
Members	graphic

9.2.20. model.hiLike

model.hiLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	m model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase w
Members	hi q

9.2.21. model.highlighted

model.highlighted groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.phrase
Members	model.emphLike[term title] model.hiLike[hi q]

9.2.22. model.inter

model.inter groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	lem macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common rdg witness
Members	model.attributable[model.quoteLike[quote]] model.biblLike model.egLike model.labelLike model.listLike[listOrg listPerson listWit] model.oddDecl model.stageLike

9.2.23. model.limitedPhrase

model.limitedPhrase groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	creation macro.phraseSeq.limited witness
Members	model.emphLike[term title] model.hiLike[hi q] model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[roleName] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno rs]] model.pPart.editorial[subst] model.pPart.msdesc[objectType stamp] model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ptr ref]

9.2.24. model.listLike

model.listLike groups list-like elements. [3.8. Lists]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.inter sourceDesc
Members	listOrg listPerson listWit

9.2.25. model.milestoneLike

model.milestoneLike groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. The TEI Class System 3.11.3. Milestone Elements]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.global org subst
Members	lb pb

9.2.26. model.nameLike

model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.	
Module	tei
Used by	model.addrPart model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data org
Members	model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[roleName] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno rs
Note	A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

9.2.27. model.nameLike.agent

model.nameLike.agent groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.nameLike
Members	name orgName persName
Note	This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

9.2.28. model.noteLike

model.noteLike groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.9. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing]	
Module	tei
Used by	app model.global org
Members	note noteGrp

9.2.29. model.orgPart

model.orgPart groups elements which form part of the description of an organization.	
Module	tei
Used by	org
Members	model.eventLike listOrg listPerson

9.2.30. model.pLike

model.pLike groups paragraph-like elements.	
Module	tei
Used by	availability correspAction correspDesc encodingDesc langUsage model.divPart org particDesc person physDesc publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc
Members	ab p

9.2.31. model.pPart.data

model.pPart.data groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.limitedPhrase model.phrase
Members	model.addressLike[address] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[roleName] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno rs]

9.2.32. model.pPart.edit

model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.phrase pc w
Members	model.pPart.editorial[subst] model.pPart.transcriptional[add del restore]

9.2.33. model.pPart.editorial

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit
Members	subst

9.2.34. model.pPart.msdesc

model.pPart.msdesc groups phrase-level elements used in manuscript description. [10. Manuscript Description]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.limitedPhrase model.phrase
Members	objectType stamp

9.2.35. model.pPart.transcriptional

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.pPart.edit
Members	add del restore

9.2.36. model.persNamePart

model.persNamePart groups elements which form part of a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates
Used by	model.nameLike
Members	roleName

9.2.37. model.persStateLike

model.persStateLike groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name.	
Module	tei
Used by	model.personPart
Members	persName
Note	These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others.

9.2.38. model.personLike

model.personLike groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.	
Module	tei
Used by	listPerson org particDesc
Members	org person

9.2.39. model.personPart

model.personPart groups elements which form part of the description of a person. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]	
Module	tei
Used by	person
Members	model.biblLike model.eventLike model.persStateLike[persName] idno name

9.2.40. model.phrase

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	date lem macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara rdg
Members	model.graphicLike[graphic] model.highlighted[model.emphLike[term title] model.hiLike[hi q]] model.lPart model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[roleName] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno rs]] model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[subst] model.pPart.transcriptional[add del restore]] model.pPart.msdesc[objectType stamp] model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ptr ref] model.segLike[c cl m pc phr s seg w] model.specDescLike
Note	This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

9.2.41. model.physDescPart

model.physDescPart groups specialized elements forming part of the physical description of a manuscript or similar written source.	
Module	msdescription
Used by	physDesc
Members	accMat

9.2.42. model.placeNamePart

model.placeNamePart groups elements which form part of a place name. [13.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.placeStateLike
Members	country settlement

9.2.43. model.placeStateLike

model.placeStateLike groups elements which describe changing states of a place.	
Module	tei
Used by	model.nameLike
Members	model.placeNamePart[country settlement]

9.2.44. model.profileDescPart

model.profileDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.	
Module	tei
Used by	profileDesc
Members	correspDesc creation handNotes langUsage listTranspose particDesc textClass

9.2.45. model.ptrLike

model.ptrLike groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.limitedPhrase model.phrase model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Members	ptr ref

9.2.46. model.publicationStmtPart.agency

model.publicationStmtPart.agency groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei
Used by	publicationStmt
Members	publisher
Note	The ‘agency’ child elements, while not required, are required if one of the ‘detail’ child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a ‘detail’ child element without a preceding ‘agency’ child element. See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail.

9.2.47. model.publicationStmtPart.detail

model.publicationStmtPart.detail groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei
Used by	publicationStmt
Members	model.ptrLike[ptr ref] address availability date idno pubPlace
Note	A ‘detail’ child element may not occur unless an ‘agency’ child element precedes it.

	See also model.publicationStmtPart.agency.

9.2.48. model.quoteLike

model.quoteLike groups elements used to directly contain quotations.	
Module	tei
Used by	model.attributable
Members	quote

9.2.49. model.rdgLike

model.rdgLike groups elements which contain a single reading, other than the lemma, within a textual variation. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	
Module	textcrit
Used by	app
Members	rdg
Note	This class allows for variants of the <rdg> element to be easily created via TEI customizations.

9.2.50. model.resource

model.resource groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	TEI
Members	facsimile text

9.2.51. model.respLike

model.respLike groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.	
Module	tei
Used by	titleStmt
Members	editor

9.2.52. model.segLike

model.segLike groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]	
Module	tei
Used by	model.phrase
Members	c cl m pc phr s seg w
Note	The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the `<segmentation>` element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header.

9.2.53. model.teiHeaderPart

model.teiHeaderPart groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.	
Module	tei
Used by	teiHeader
Members	encodingDesc profileDesc

9.3. Attribute classes

9.3.1. att.anchoring

att.anchoring (anchoring) provides attributes for use on annotations, e.g. notes and groups of notes describing the existence and position of an anchor for annotations.

Module	tei
Members	note noteGrp
Attributes	Attributes anchored — (anchored) indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.truthValue **Default** true **Note** In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. 'page 218, lines 3–4'). The *anchored* attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the *n* attribute. targetEnd — (target end) points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space **Note** This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in 16.2.4.6. range().

Example	`<p>(...) tamen reuerendos dominos archiepiscopum et canonicos Leopolienses necnon episcopum in duplicibus Quatuortemporibus<anchor xml:id="A55234"/> totaliter expediui...</p>`
	`<!-- elsewhere in the document -->`
	`<noteGrp targetEnd="#A55234">`
	`<note xml:lang="en"> Quatuor Tempora, so called dry fast days. </note>`
	`<note xml:lang="pl"> Quatuor Tempora, tzw. Suche dni postne. </note>`
	`</noteGrp>`

9.3.2. att.ascribed

att.ascribed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]

Module	tei
Members	att.ascribed.directed[q] change

Attributes	Attributes
	who — indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.
	Status Optional
	Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space
	In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (`<sp>`) in the body of the play are linked to `<castItem>` elements in the `<castList>` using the *who* attribute.
	`<castItem type="role">`
	`<role xml:id="Barnardo">Bernardo</role>`
	`</castItem>`
	`<castItem type="role">`
	`<role xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role>`
	`<roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc>`

```
</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
<sp who="#Barnardo">
 <speaker>Bernardo</speaker>
 <l n="1">Who's there?</l>
</sp>
<sp who="#Francisco">
 <speaker>Francisco</speaker>
 <l n="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</l>
</sp>
```

Note For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element.

9.3.3. att.ascribed.directed

att.ascribed.directed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be directed at a group or individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]

Module	tei
Members	q
Attributes	Attributes att.ascribed (@who)

toWhom — indicates the person, or group of people, to whom a speech act or action is directed.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space

In the following example from Mary Pix's The False Friend, speeches (`<sp>`) in the body of the play are linked to `<castItem>` elements in the `<castList>` using the *toWhom* attribute, which is used to specify who the speech is directed to. Additionally, the `<stage>` includes *toWhom* to indicate the directionality of the action.

```
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="emil">Emilius.</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="lov">Lovisa</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="serv">A servant</role>
</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
<sp who="#emil"
 toWhom="#lov">
 <speaker>Emil.</speaker>
 <l n="1">My love!</l>
</sp>
<sp who="#lov"
 toWhom="#emil">
 <speaker>Lov.</speaker>
 <l n="2">I have no Witness of my Noble Birth</l>
 <stage who="emil"
  toWhom="#serv">Pointing to her Woman.</stage>
 <l>But that poor helpless wretch—</l>
</sp>
```

Note To indicate the recipient of written correspondence, use the elements used in section 2.4.6. Correspondence Description, rather than a *toWhom* attribute.

9.3.4. att.breaking

att.breaking provides attributes to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

Module	tei
Members	lb pb
Attributes	Attributes

break — indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.

	Status Recommended
	Datatype teidata.enumerated
	Sample values include **yes** the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace
	no the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace
	maybe the encoding does not take any position on this issue.
	In the following lines from the 'Dream of the Rood', linebreaks occur in the middle of the words *l#ðost* and *reord-berendum*.
	`<ab> ...e#esa tome iu ic#æs #e#orden #ita heardo#t .`
	`leodum la<lb break="no"/> ðost ærþan ichim lifes`
	`#e# rihtne #erymde reord be<lb break="no"/>`
	`rendum h#æt me þa#e#eorðode #uldres ealdor ofer...`
	`</ab>`

9.3.5. att.cReferencing

att.cReferencing provides attributes that may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.	
Module	tei
Members	ptr ref term
Attributes	Attributes cRef (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a `<refsDecl>` element in the TEI header **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.text **Note** The value of *cRef* should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 16.2.5. Canonical References) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target. The `<refsDecl>` to use may be indicated with the *decls* attribute. Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <ptr> element.

9.3.6. att.canonical

att.canonical provides attributes that can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]	
Module	tei
Members	att.naming[att.personal[name orgName persName roleName] country editor pubPlace rs settlement] correspDesc date objectType publisher term title
Attributes	Attributes key provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind. **Status** Optional

Datatype teidata.text

```
<author>
 <name key="name 427308"
  type="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council]</name>
</author>
```

```
<author>
 <name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"
  ref="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</name>
</author>
```

Note The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.

No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the *key* attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project. For the same reason, this attribute is not recommended in data interchange, since there is no way of ensuring that the values used by one project are distinct from those used by another. In such a situation, a preferable approach for magic tokens which follows standard practice on the Web is to use a *ref* attribute whose value is a tag URI as defined in RFC 4151.

ref (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space

```
<name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"
 type="person">Seamus Heaney</name>
```

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

9.3.7. att.coordinated

att.coordinated provides attributes that can be used to position their parent element within a two dimensional coordinate system.

Module	transcr
Members	surface
Attributes	Attributes

start — indicates the element within a transcription of the text containing at least the start of the writing represented by this zone or surface.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

ulx — gives the x coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

uly — gives the y coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

lrx — gives the x coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

	lry	gives the y coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.numeric
	points	identifies a two dimensional area by means of a series of pairs of numbers, each of which gives the x,y coordinates of a point on a line enclosing the area. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 3–# occurrences of teidata.point separated by whitespace

9.3.8. att.datable

att.datable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates]

Module	tei
Members	change country creation date editor idno licence name orgName persName settlement stamp title

Attributes	Attributes att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)
	calendar: indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.
	Status Optional
	Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
	Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]"> <sch:assert test="string-length(.) gt 0"> @calendar indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>
	`He was born on <date calendar="#gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</date> (<date calendar="#julian" when="1732-02-22">Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.</date>).`
	`He was born on <date calendar="#gregorian #julian" when="1732-02-22">Feb. 22, 1732 (Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.)</date>.`
	Note Note that the *calendar* attribute (unlike *datingMethod* defined in att.datable.custom) defines the calendar system of the date in the original material defined by the parent element, *not* the calendar to which the date is normalized.
	period: supplies pointers to one or more definitions of named periods of time (typically <category>s or <calendar>s) within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.
	Status Optional
	Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note	This 'superclass' provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the att.datable.w3c class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the att.datable.iso and att.datable.custom classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

9.3.9. att.datable.custom

att.datable.custom provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [13.4. Dates]

Module	namesdates
Members	att.datable[change country creation date editor idno licence name orgName persName settlement stamp title]
Attributes	Attributes

when-custom — supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are *not* valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system

```
<p>Alhazen died in Cairo on the
<date when="1040-03-06"
  when-custom="431-06-12"> 12th day of Jumada t-Tania, 430 AH
 </date>.</p>
<p>The current world will end at the
<date when="2012-12-21"
  when-custom="13.0.0.0.0">end of B'ak'tun 13</date>.</p>
<p>The Battle of Meggidu
 (<date when-custom="Thutmose_III:23">23rd year of reign of Thutmose III</date>).</p>
<p>Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX plus minus sub
<date when-custom="Ind:4-10-11">die XI mensis Octobris indictione IIII</date>
</p>
```

Not all custom date formulations will have Gregorian equivalents.The *when-custom* attribute and other custom dating are not constrained to a datatype by the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats.

notBefore-custom — specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

notAfter-custom — specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

from-custom — indicates the starting point of the period in some custom standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

```
<event xml:id="FIRE1"
 datingMethod="#julian"
 from-custom="1666-09-02"
 to-custom="1666-09-05">
 <head>The Great Fire of London</head>
 <p>The Great Fire of London burned through a large part
   of the city of London.</p>
</event>
```

to-custom — indicates the ending point of the period in some custom standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

datingPoint — supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

	datingMethod	supplies a pointer to a <calendar> element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.pointer

```
Contayning the Originall, Antiquity, Increa#e, Moderne
 e#tate, and de#cription of that Citie, written in the yeare
<date when-custom="1598"
 calendar="#julian"
 datingMethod="#julian">1598</date>. by Iohn Stow
 Citizen of London.
```

In this example, the *calendar* attribute points to a <calendar> element for the Julian calendar, specifying that the text content of the <date> element is a Julian date, and the *datingMethod* attribute also points to the Julian calendar to indicate that the content of the *when-custom* attribute value is Julian too.

```
<date when="1382-06-28"
 when-custom="6890-06-20"
 datingMethod="#creationOfWorld"> µ### ####### ### <num>#</num> ##### <num>###</num>
</date>
```

In this example, a date is given in a Mediaeval text measured "from the creation of the world", which is normalised (in *when*) to the Gregorian date, but is also normalized (in *when-custom*) to a machine-actionable, numeric version of the date from the Creation.

Note Note that the *datingMethod* attribute (unlike *calendar* defined in att.datable) defines the calendar or dating system to which the date described by the parent element is normalized (i.e. in the *when-custom* or other *X-custom* attributes), *not* the calendar of the original date in the element.

9.3.10. att.datable.iso

att.datable.iso provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the ISO 8601 standard. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates]

Module	namesdates
Members	att.datable[change country creation date editor idno licence name orgName persName settlement stamp title]
Attributes	Attributes

when-iso — supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.iso

The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date & time formats that are *not* valid W3C format normalizations.

```
<date when-iso="1996-09-24T07:25+00">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
<date when-iso="1996-09-24T03:25-04">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
<time when-iso="1999-01-04T20:42-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>
<time when-iso="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>
<date when-iso="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May</dat
<time when-iso="03:00">3 A.M.</time>
<time when-iso="14">around two</time>
<time when-iso="15,5">half past three</time>
```

All of the examples of the *when* attribute in the att.datable.w3c class are also valid with respect to this attribute.

```
He likes to be punctual. I said <q>
 <time when-iso="12">around noon</time>
</q>, and he showed up at <time when-iso="12:00:00">12 O'clock</time> on the dot.
```

The second occurence of <time> could have been encoded with the *when* attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification. The first occurence could not.

	notBefore-iso	specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.temporal.iso
	notAfter-iso	specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.temporal.iso
	from-iso	indicates the starting point of the period in standard form. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.temporal.iso
	to-iso	indicates the ending point of the period in standard form. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.temporal.iso

Note	The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601, using the Gregorian calendar.
	If both *when-iso* and *dur-iso* are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,
	`<date when-iso="2007-06-01" dur-iso="P8D"/>`
	indicates the same time period as
	`<date when-iso="2007-06-01/P8D"/>`
	In providing a 'regularized' form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.	

9.3.11. att.datable.w3c

att.datable.w3c provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates]	
Module	tei
Members	att.datable[change country creation date editor idno licence name orgName persName settlement stamp title]
Attributes	Attributes when — supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.temporal.w3c Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.

```
<p>
 <date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>
 <date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
 <time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time>
 <time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
 <date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
 <date when="--06-12">June 12th</date>
 <date when="---01">the first of the month</date>
 <date when="--08">August</date>
 <date when="2006">MMVI</date>
 <date when="0056">AD 56</date>
 <date when="-0056">56 BC</date>
</p>
```

```
This list begins in
 the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after
 Pentecost, in that year the
<date calendar="#julian"
 when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.
```

```
<opener>
 <dateline>
  <placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>
```

	<date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date> </dateline> <salute>To Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday <time when="12:00:00">noon.</time> </opener>
	notBefore — specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.temporal.w3c
	notAfter — specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.temporal.w3c
	from — indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.temporal.w3c
	to — indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.temporal.w3c
Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|@to" role="nonfatal">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule>
Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore" role="nonfatal">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>
Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]"> <sch:report test="@notAfter" role="nonfatal">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>
Example	<date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</date>
Note	The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar. The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is `yyyy-mm-dd`, but `yyyy`, `--mm`, `---dd`, `yyyy-mm`, or `--mm-dd` may also be used. For the time part, the form `hh:mm:ss` is used. Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

9.3.12. att.datcat

att.datcat provides attributes that are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by the ISO 12620:2009 standard and stored in the Web repository called ISOCat at http://www.isocat.org/. [9.5.2. Lexical View 18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values]	
Module	tei
Members	att.segLike[c cl m pc phr s seg w]
Attributes	Attributes
	datcat — contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the given element with the appropriate Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space
	valueDatcat — contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the content of the given element or the value of the given attribute with the appropriate simple Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.

	Status Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space

Example	In this example *dcr:datcat* relates the feature name to the data category "partOfSpeech" and *dcr:valueDatcat* the feature value to the data category "commonNoun". Both these data categories reside in the ISOcat DCR at www.isocat.org, which is the DCR used by ISO TC37 and hosted by its registration authority, the MPI for Psycholinguistics in Nijmegen.
	`<fs`
	`xmlns:dcr="http://www.isocat.org/ns/dcr">`
	`<f name="POS"`
	`dcr:datcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1345" fVal="#commonNoun"`
	`dcr:valueDatcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1256"/>`
	`</fs>`

Note	ISO 12620:2009 is a standard describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). Data categories are defined as elementary descriptors in a linguistic structure. In the DCR data model each data category gets assigned a unique Peristent IDentifier (PID), i.e., an URI. Linguistic resources or preferably their schemas that make use of data categories from a DCR should refer to them using this PID. For XML-based resources, like TEI documents, ISO 12620:2009 normative Annex A gives a small Data Category Reference XML vocabulary (also available online at http://www.isocat.org/12620/), which provides two attributes, *dcr:datcat* and *dcr:valueDatcat*.

9.3.13. att.declarable

att.declarable provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *decls* attribute. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]	
Module	tei
Members	availability correspDesc langUsage listOrg listPerson particDesc seriesStmt sourceDesc textClass
Attributes	Attributes default — indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.truthValue **Legal values are:** **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected **false** This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.[Default]
Note	The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text. Only one element of a particular type may have a *default* attribute with a value of true.

9.3.14. att.declaring

att.declaring provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]	
Module	tei
Members	ab body div facsimile graphic p ptr ref surface surfaceGrp term text
Attributes	Attributes decls — identifies one or more *declarable elements* within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space

Note	The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text.

9.3.15. att.dimensions

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.	
Module	tei
Members	add date del gap restore subst

Attributes	Attributes att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)
	unit — names the unit used for the measurement
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.enumerated
	Suggested values include: **cm** (centimetres); **mm** (millimetres); **in** (inches); **line** lines of text; **char** (characters) characters of text
	quantity — specifies the length in the units specified
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.numeric
	extent — indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.text
	`<gap extent="5 words"/>`
	`<height extent="half the page"/>`
	precision — characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.certainty
	scope — where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.enumerated
	Sample values include: **all** measurement applies to all instances.; **most** measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.; **range** measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

9.3.16. att.divLike

att.divLike provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [4. Default Text Structure]

Module	tei
Members	div
Attributes	Attributes att.fragmentable (@part) org (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Legal values are:** **composite** no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships. **uniform** the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence.[Default] sample indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Legal values are:** **initial** division lacks material present at end in source. **medial** division lacks material at start and end. **final** division lacks material at start. **unknown** position of sampled material within original unknown. **complete** division is not a sample.[Default]

9.3.17. att.docStatus

att.docStatus provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.	
Module	tei
Members	change revisionDesc
Attributes	Attributes status describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Sample values include:** **approved** **candidate** **cleared** **deprecated**

	draft [Default] **embargoed** **expired** **frozen** **galley** **proposed** **published** **recommendation** **submitted** **unfinished** **withdrawn**

Example	`<revisionDesc status="published">`
	` <change when="2010-10-21"`
	`  status="published"/>`
	` <change when="2010-10-02" status="cleared"/>`
	` <change when="2010-08-02"`
	`  status="embargoed"/>`
	` <change when="2010-05-01" status="frozen"`
	`  who="#MSM"/>`
	` <change when="2010-03-01" status="draft"`
	`  who="#LB"/>`
	`</revisionDesc>`

9.3.18. att.editLike

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 10.3.1. Origination 13.3.2. The Person Element 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work]

Module	tei
Members	att.transcriptional[add del restore subst] date gap name org orgName persName person
Attributes	Attributes evidence — indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace **Suggested values include:** **internal** there is internal evidence to support the intervention.

	external there is external evidence to support the intervention. **conjecture** the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise. instant indicates whether this is an instant revision or not. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.xTruthValue **Default** false
Note	The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc. Each pointer on the *source* (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <witness>, `<msDesc>`, or `<bibl>` element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.

9.3.19. att.edition

att.edition provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.	
Module	tei
Members	lb pb
Attributes	Attributes ed (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace edRef (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Example	`<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>`
	`<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>`
	`<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l>`

Example	`<listBibl>`
	` <bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">`
	`  <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,`
	` <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>, <date>1937</date>`
	` </bibl>`
	` <bibl xml:id="stapledon1968">`
	`  <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,`
	` <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Dover</publisher>, <date>1968</date>`
	` </bibl>`
	`</listBibl>`
	`<!-- ... -->`
	`<p>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of`
	` the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their`
	` strength maintaining the<pb n="411" edRef="#stapledon1968"/>essentials of their ancient culture,`
	` still living their personal lives in zest and endless`
	` novelty of action, … I saw myself still`
	` preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid`
	` con-<pb n="291" edRef="#stapledon1937"/>sciousness;</p>`

9.3.20. att.fragmentable

att.fragmentable provides attributes for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.	
Module	tei

Members	att.divLike[div] att.segLike[c cl m pc phr s seg w] ab p
Attributes	Attributes part — specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Legal values are:** **Y** (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect **N** (no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness[Default] **I** (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element **M** (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element **F** (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element **Note** The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.

9.3.21. att.global

att.global provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1. Global Attributes]	
Module	tei
Members	TEI ab accMat add address app availability body c change cl classCode correspAction correspDesc country creation date del div editor encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc gap graphic handNote handNotes hi idno interp interpGrp keywords langUsage language lb lem licence listOrg listPerson listTranspose listWit m metamark name note noteGrp objectType org orgName p particDesc pb pc persName person phr physDesc postCode profileDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote rdg ref restore revisionDesc roleName rs s seg seriesStmt settlement sourceDesc span spanGrp stamp street subst surface surfaceGrp teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt transpose variantEncoding w witness
Attributes	Attributes att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source) xml:id — (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute. **Status** Optional **Datatype** ID **Note** The *xml:id* attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.11. Reference Systems. n — (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.text

Note The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

xml:lang (language) indicates the language of the element content using a 'tag' generated according to BCP 47.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.language

```
<p> … The consequences of
 this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last
<foreign xml:lang="rap">ariki</foreign> or chief
 (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to
 ancestral territorial organization.</p>
```

Note The *xml:lang* value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify *xml:lang* at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the <teiHeader> from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.

Only attributes with free text values (rare in these guidelines) will be in the scope of *xml:lang*.

The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php.

The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their IETFInternet Engineering Task Force definitions.

xml:base provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

```
<div type="bibl">
 <head>Bibliography</head>
 <listBibl xml:base="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/Works/">
  <bibl>
   <author>
    <name>Landon, Letitia Elizabeth</name>
   </author>
   <ref target="LandLVowOf.sgm">
    <title>The Vow of the Peacock</title>
   </ref>
  </bibl>
  <bibl>
   <author>
    <name>Compton, Margaret Clephane</name>
   </author>
   <ref target="NortMIrene.sgm">
    <title>Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos</title>
   </ref>
  </bibl>
  <bibl>
   <author>
    <name>Taylor, Jane</name>
   </author>
   <ref target="TaylJEssay.sgm">
    <title>Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners</title>
   </ref>
```

```
  </bibl>
 </listBibl>
</div>
```

xml:space — signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

- **Status** Optional
- **Datatype** teidata.enumerated
- **Legal values are:**
  - **default** signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable
  - **preserve** indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space
- **Note** The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.

9.3.22. att.global.analytic

att.global.analytic provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [17.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses 17.3. Spans and Interpretations]

Module	analysis
Members	att.global[TEI ab accMat add address app availability body c change cl classCode correspAction correspDesc country creation date del div editor encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc gap graphic handNote handNotes hi idno interp interpGrp keywords langUsage language lb lem licence listOrg listPerson listTranspose listWit m metamark name note noteGrp objectType org orgName p particDesc pb pc persName person phr physDesc postCode profileDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote rdg ref restore revisionDesc roleName rs s seg seriesStmt settlement sourceDesc span spanGrp stamp street subst surface surfaceGrp teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt transpose variantEncoding w witness]
Attributes	Attributes ana — (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the *ana* attribute appears. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space **Note** When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.

9.3.23. att.global.change

att.global.change provides attributes allowing its member elements to specify one or more states or revision campaigns with which they are associated.

Module	transcr
Members	att.global[TEI ab accMat add address app availability body c change cl classCode correspAction correspDesc country creation date del div editor encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc gap graphic handNote handNotes hi idno interp interpGrp keywords langUsage language lb lem licence listOrg listPerson listTranspose listWit m metamark name note noteGrp objectType org orgName p particDesc pb pc persName person phr physDesc postCode profileDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote rdg ref restore revisionDesc roleName rs s seg seriesStmt settlement sourceDesc span spanGrp stamp street subst surface surfaceGrp teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt transpose variantEncoding w witness]
Attributes	Attributes

	change	points to one or more <change> elements documenting a state or revision campaign to which the element bearing this attribute and its children have been assigned by the encoder. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space

9.3.24. att.global.facs

att.global.facs provides attributes used to express correspondence between an element and all or part of a facsimile image or surface. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]	
Module	transcr
Members	att.global[TEI ab accMat add address app availability body c change cl classCode correspAction correspDesc country creation date del div editor encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc gap graphic handNote handNotes hi idno interp interpGrp keywords langUsage language lb lem licence listOrg listPerson listTranspose listWit m metamark name note noteGrp objectType org orgName p particDesc pb pc persName person phr physDesc postCode profileDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote rdg ref restore revisionDesc roleName rs s seg seriesStmt settlement sourceDesc span spanGrp stamp street subst surface surfaceGrp teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt transpose variantEncoding w witness]
Attributes	Attributes facs (facsimile) points to one or more images, portions of an image, or surfaces which correspond to the current element. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space

9.3.25. att.global.linking

att.global.linking provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment]	
Module	linking
Members	att.global[TEI ab accMat add address app availability body c change cl classCode correspAction correspDesc country creation date del div editor encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc gap graphic handNote handNotes hi idno interp interpGrp keywords langUsage language lb lem licence listOrg listPerson listTranspose listWit m metamark name note noteGrp objectType org orgName p particDesc pb pc persName person phr physDesc postCode profileDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote rdg ref restore revisionDesc roleName rs s seg seriesStmt settlement sourceDesc span spanGrp stamp street subst surface surfaceGrp teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt transpose variantEncoding w witness]
Attributes	Attributes corresp (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space

```
<group>
 <text xml:id="t1-g1-t1"
  xml:lang="mi">
  <body xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1">
   <div type="chapter">
    <head>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</head>
    <p>…</p>
   </div>
  </body>
 </text>
 <text xml:id="t1-g1-t2"
  xml:lang="en">
  <body xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1"
   corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1">
   <div type="chapter">
    <head>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.</head>
```

```
    <p>…</p>
   </div>
  </body>
 </text>
</group>
```

In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using *corresp*. The language is indicated using *xml:lang*, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the *corresp* and the tag pointed to by the *corresp* inherit the value from their immediate parent.

```
<!-- In a placeography called "places.xml" --><place xml:id="LOND1"
 corresp="people.xml#LOND2 people.xml#GENI1">
 <placeName>London</placeName>
 <desc>The city of London...</desc>
</place>
<!-- In a literary personography called "people.xml" -->
<person xml:id="LOND2"
 corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #GENI1">
 <persName type="lit">London</persName>
 <note>
  <p>Allegorical character representing the city of <placeName ref="places.xml#LOND1">Londo
 </note>
</person>
<person xml:id="GENI1"
 corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2">
 <persName type="lit">London’s Genius</persName>
 <note>
  <p>Personification of London’s genius. Appears as an
     allegorical character in mayoral shows.
  </p>
 </note>
</person>
```

In this example, a <place> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <person> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.

synch — (synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.

Status	Optional
Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space

sameAs — points to an element that is the same as the current element.

Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.pointer

copyOf — points to an element of which the current element is a copy.

Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.pointer
Note	Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.

next — points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.pointer
Note	It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.

prev — (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.pointer

	Note	It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.
exclude	points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space
select	selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space
	Note	This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

9.3.26. att.global.rendition

att.global.rendition provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators]

Module	tei
Members	att.global[TEI ab accMat add address app availability body c change cl classCode correspAction correspDesc country creation date del div editor encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc gap graphic handNote handNotes hi idno interp interpGrp keywords langUsage language lb lem licence listOrg listPerson listTranspose listWit m metamark name note noteGrp objectType org orgName p particDesc pb pc persName person phr physDesc postCode profileDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote rdg ref restore revisionDesc roleName rs s seg seriesStmt settlement sourceDesc span spanGrp stamp street subst surface surfaceGrp teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt transpose variantEncoding w witness]

Attributes

Attributes

rend	(rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

```
<head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)">
 <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle,
<lb/>On Her <lb/>
 <hi rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

Note	These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the *rend* attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the *rend* attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.

style	contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.text

```
<head style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps">
 <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her
<lb/>
 <hi style="font-variant: normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
```

```
</head>
```

Note Unlike the attribute values of *rend*, which uses white-space as a separator, the *style* attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output.

The formal language in which values for this attribute are expressed may be specified using the `<styleDefDecl>` element in the TEI header.

If *style* and *rendition* are both present on an element, then *style* overrides or complements *rendition*. *style* should not be used in conjunction with *rend*, because the latter does not employ a formal style definition language.

rendition points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space

```
<head rendition="#ac #sc">
 <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her
<lb/>
 <hi rendition="#normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
<!-- elsewhere... -->
<rendition xml:id="sc"
 scheme="css">font-variant: small-caps</rendition>
<rendition xml:id="normal"
 scheme="css">font-variant: normal</rendition>
<rendition xml:id="ac"
 scheme="css">text-align: center</rendition>
```

Note The *rendition* attribute is used in a very similar way to the *class* attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper.

If *rendition* is used to refer to a style definition in a formal language like CSS, it is recommended that it not be used in conjunction with *rend*. Where both *rendition* and *rend* are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.

Each URI provided should indicate a `<rendition>` element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the *scheme* attribute.

9.3.27. att.global.responsibility

att.global.responsibility provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 11.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes 17.3. Spans and Interpretations 13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]

Module	tei
Members	att.global[TEI ab accMat add address app availability body c change cl classCode correspAction correspDesc country creation date del div editor encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc gap graphic handNote handNotes hi idno interp interpGrp keywords langUsage language lb lem licence listOrg listPerson listTranspose listWit m metamark name note noteGrp objectType org orgName p particDesc pb pc persName person phr physDesc postCode profileDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote rdg ref restore revisionDesc roleName rs s seg seriesStmt settlement sourceDesc span spanGrp stamp street subst surface surfaceGrp teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt transpose variantEncoding w witness]
Attributes	Attributes

cert (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.

Status Optional

	Datatype	teidata.probCert
resp	(responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space
	Note	To reduce the ambiguity of a *resp* pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that *resp* be used to point not to an agent (<person> or <org>) but to a `<respStmt>`, `<author>`, <editor> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple `<respStmt>`s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).

Example

```
Blessed are the
<choice>
 <sic>cheesemakers</sic>
 <corr resp="#editor" cert="high">peacemakers</corr>
</choice>: for they shall be called the children of God.
```

Example

```
<!-- in the <text> ... --><lg>
<!-- ... -->
 <l>Punkes, Panders, ba#e extortionizing
   sla<choice>
   <sic>n</sic>
   <corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber">u</corr>
  </choice>es,</l>
<!-- ... -->
</lg>
<!-- in the <teiHeader> ... -->
<!-- ... -->
<respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber">
 <resp when="2014">Transcriber</resp>
 <name>Janelle Jenstad</name>
</respStmt>
```

9.3.28. att.global.source

att.global.source provides attributes used by elements to point to an external source. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.3.3. Quotation 8.3.4. Writing]

Module	tei
Members	att.global[TEI ab accMat add address app availability body c change cl classCode correspAction correspDesc country creation date del div editor encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc gap graphic handNote handNotes hi idno interp interpGrp keywords langUsage language lb lem licence listOrg listPerson listTranspose listWit m metamark name note noteGrp objectType org orgName p particDesc pb pc persName person phr physDesc postCode profileDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote rdg ref restore revisionDesc roleName rs s seg seriesStmt settlement sourceDesc span spanGrp stamp street subst surface surfaceGrp teiHeader term text textClass title titleStmt transpose variantEncoding w witness]

Attributes

Attributes

source	specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space
	Note	The *source* attribute points to an external source. When used on elements describing schema components such as `<schemaSpec>` or `<moduleRef>` it identifies the source from which declarations for the components of the object being defined may be obtained. On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn. In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative

	URI, or private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a <prefixDef>. If more than one location is specified, the default assumption is that the required source should be obtained by combining the resources indicated.
Example	 <!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>) tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">... term.</quote> <!-- ... -->
Example	 <!-- ... --> <quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the less we seem to know.</quote> <!-- ... --> <!-- ... --> <bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed"> <title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>, <edition>15th edition</edition>. <pubPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>: <publisher>University of Chicago Press</publisher> (<date>2003</date>), <biblScope unit="page">p.147</biblScope>. </bibl>
Example	<elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/> Include in the schema an element named available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release.
Example	<schemaSpec ident="myODD" source="mycompiledODD.xml"> <!-- further declarations specifying the components required --> </schemaSpec> Create a schema using components taken from the file mycompiledODD.xml.

9.3.29. att.handFeatures

att.handFeatures provides attributes describing aspects of the hand in which a manuscript is written. [11.3.2.1. Document Hands]	
Module	tei
Members	handNote
Attributes	Attributes scribe — gives a name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.name scribeRef — points to a full description of the scribe concerned, typically supplied by a <person> element elsewhere in the description. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space script — characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example *secretary*, *copperplate*, *Chancery*, *Italian*, etc. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.name separated by whitespace scriptRef — points to a full description of the script or writing style used by this hand, typically supplied by a <scriptNote> element elsewhere in the description. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space medium — describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. *brown*, or other writing medium, e.g. *pencil* **Status** Optional

		Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace
	scope	specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Legal values are:	**sole** only this hand is used throughout the manuscript
			major this hand is used through most of the manuscript
			minor this hand is used occasionally in the manuscript
Note	Usually either *script* or *scriptRef*, and similarly, either *scribe* or *scribeRef*, will be supplied.		

9.3.30. att.internetMedia

att.internetMedia provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.			
Module	tei		
Members	att.media[graphic] ptr ref		
Attributes	Attributes		
	mimeType	(MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace
Example	In this example *mimeType* is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8. `<ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8" target="http://sourceforge.net/p/tei/code/HEAD/tree/trunk/P5/Source/guidelines-en.xml"/>`		
Note	This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The *mimeType* attribute must have a value taken from this list.		

9.3.31. att.lexicographic.normalized

att.lexicographic.normalized provides attributes for usage within word-level elements in the analysis module and within lexicographic microstructure in the dictionaries module.			
Module	analysis		
Members	att.linguistic[pc w]		
Attributes	Attributes		
	norm	(normalized) provides the normalized/standardized form of information present in the source text in a non-normalized form	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.text
		Normalization of part-of-speech information within a dictionary entry. `<gramGrp> <pos norm="noun">n</pos> </gramGrp>`	
		Normalization of a source form in a tokenized historical corpus. `<s> <w>for</w> <w norm="virtue's">vertues</w> <w>sake</w> </s>`	

```
<s>
 <w norm="persuasion">perswasion</w>
 <w>of</w>
 <w norm="Unity">Vnitie</w>
</s>
```

Example of normalization from Aviso. Relation oder Zeitung. Wolfenbüttel, 1609. In: Deutsches Textarchiv.

```
<s>
 <w norm="freiwillig">freywillig</w>
 <pc norm=","
  join="left">/</pc>
 <w norm="unbedrängt">vnbedra#ngt</w>
 <w norm="und">vnd</w>
 <w norm="unverhindert">vnuerhindert</w>
</s>
```

```
<w norm="Teil">Theyll</w>
```

```
<w norm="Freude">Frewde</w>
```

orig — (original) gives the original string or is the empty string when the element does not appear in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

Example from a language documentation project of the Mixtepec-Mixtec language (ISO 639-3: 'mix'). This is a use case where speakers spell something incorrectly but we would like to preserve it for any number of reasons, the use of *orig* is essential and could have uses for both the speaker to see past mistakes, researchers to get insight into how untrained speakers write their language instinctually (in contrast to prescribed convention), etc.:

```
<w orig="ntsa sia'i">ntsasia'i</w>
```

Example from the EarlyPrint project. Fragment of text where obvious errors have been corrected but the original forms remain recorded:

```
<w lemma="he"
 pos="pns"
 xml:id="b1afj-003-a-0950">he</w>
<w lemma="have"
 pos="vvz"
 xml:id="b1afj-003-a-0960">hath</w>
<w lemma="bring"
 pos="vvn"
 xml:id="b1afj-003-a-0970">brought</w>
<w lemma="forth"
 pos="av"
 xml:id="b1afj-003-a-0980"
 orig="sorth">forth</w>
```

An example from the EarlyPrint project showing the use of both *norm* and *orig*. The *orig* attribute preserves the original version (sometimes with spelling errors, often with printer abbreviations), the element content resolves printer abbreviations but retains the original orthography, and the *norm* attribute holds normalized values:

```
<w lemma="commandment"
 pos="n1"
 norm="commandment"
 xml:id="b9avr-018-a-7720"
 orig="commandeme#t">commandement</w>
```

Note	It needs to be stressed that the two attributes in this class are meant for strictly lexicographic and linguistic uses, and not for editorial interventions. For the latter, the mechanism based on `<choice>`, `<orig>`, and `<reg>` needs to be employed.

9.3.32. att.linguistic

att.linguistic provides a set of attributes concerning linguistic features of tokens, for usage within token-level elements, specifically <w> and <pc> in the analysis module. [17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation]	
Module	analysis
Members	pc w
Attributes	Attributes att.lexicographic.normalized (@norm, @orig)

lemma — provides a lemma (base form) for the word, typically uninflected and serving both as an identifier (e.g. in dictionary contexts, as a headword), and as a basis for potential inflections.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

```
<w lemma="wife">wives</w>
<w lemma="Arznei">Artzeneyen</w>
```

lemmaRef — provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

```
<w type="verb"
 lemma="hit"
 lemmaRef="http://www.example.com/lexicon/hitvb.xml">hitt<m type="suffix">ing</m>
</w>
```

pos — (part of speech) indicates the part of speech assigned to a token (i.e. information on whether it is a noun, adjective, or verb), usually according to some official reference vocabulary (e.g. for German: STTS, for English: CLAWS, for Polish: NKJP, etc.).

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

The German sentence ‘Wir fahren in den Urlaub.’ tagged with the Stuttgart-Tuebingen-Tagset (STTS).

```
<s>
 <w pos="PPER">Wir</w>
 <w pos="VVFIN">fahren</w>
 <w pos="APPR">in</w>
 <w pos="ART">den</w>
 <w pos="NN">Urlaub</w>
 <w pos="$.">.</w>
</s>
```

The English sentence ‘We're going to Brazil.’ tagged with the CLAWS-5 tagset, arranged inline (with significant whitespace).

```
<p><w pos="PNP">We</w><w pos="VBB">'re</w> <w pos="VVG">going</w> <w pos="PRP">to</w> <w po
```

The English sentence ‘We're going on vacation to Brazil for a month!’ tagged with the CLAWS-7 tagset and arranged sequentially.

```
<p>
 <w pos="PPIS2">We</w>
 <w pos="VBR">'re</w>
 <w pos="VVG">going</w>
 <w pos="II">on</w>
 <w pos="NN1">vacation</w>
 <w pos="II">to</w>
 <w pos="NP1">Brazil</w>
 <w pos="IF">for</w>
 <w pos="AT1">a</w>
 <w pos="NNT1">month</w>
 <pc pos="!">!</pc>
</p>
```

msd — (morphosyntactic description) supplies morphosyntactic information for a token, usually according to some official reference vocabulary (e.g. for German: STTS-large tagset; for a feature description system designed as (pragmatically) universal, see Universal Features).

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

```
<ab>
 <w pos="PPER"
  msd="1.Pl.*.Nom">Wir</w>
 <w pos="VVFIN"
  msd="1.Pl.Pres.Ind">fahren</w>
 <w pos="APPR"
  msd="--">in</w>
 <w pos="ART"
  msd="Def.Masc.Akk.Sg">den</w>
```

```
 <w pos="NN"
  msd="Masc.Akk.Sg">Urlaub</w>
 <pc pos="$."
  msd="--">.</pc>
</ab>
```

join — when present, it provides information on whether the token in question is adjacent to another, and if so, on which side. The definition of this attribute is adapted from ISO MAF (Morpho-syntactic Annotation Framework), ISO 24611:2012.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

Legal values are:

no (the token is not adjacent to another)

left (there is no whitespace on the left side of the token)

right (there is no whitespace on the right side of the token)

both (there is no whitespace on either side of the token)

overlap (the token overlaps with another; other devices (specifying the extent and the area of overlap) are needed to more precisely locate this token in the character stream)

The example below assumes that the lack of whitespace is marked redundantly, by using the appropriate values of *join*.

```
<s>
 <pc join="right">"</pc>
 <w join="left">Friends</w>
 <w>will</w>
 <w>be</w>
 <w join="right">friends</w>
 <pc join="both">.</pc>
 <pc join="left">"</pc>
</s>
```

Note that a project may make a decision to only indicate lack of whitespace in one direction, or do that non-redundantly. The existing proposal is the broadest possible, on the assumption that we adopt the "streamable view", where all the information on the current element needs to be represented locally.

The English sentence ‘We're going on vacation.’ tagged with the CLAWS-5 tagset, arranged sequentially, tagged on the assumption that only the lack of the preceding whitespace is indicated.

```
<p>
 <w pos="PNP">We</w>
 <w pos="VBB"
  join="left">'re</w>
 <w pos="VVG">going</w>
 <w pos="PRP">on</w>
 <w pos="NN1">vacation</w>
 <pc pos="PUN"
  join="left">.</pc>
</p>
```

Note These attributes make it possible to encode simple language corpora and to add a layer of linguistic information to any tokenized resource. See section 17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation for discussion.

9.3.33. att.media

att.media provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.

Module	tei
Members	graphic
Attributes	Attributes att.internetMedia (@mimeType) width — Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.outputMeasurement height — Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.outputMeasurement scale — Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.numeric

9.3.34. att.msExcerpt

att.msExcerpt (manuscript excerpt) provides attributes used to describe excerpts from a manuscript placed in a description thereof. [10.6. Intellectual Content]	
Module	msdescription
Members	quote
Attributes	Attributes defective — indicates whether the passage being quoted is defective, i.e. incomplete through loss or damage. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.xTruthValue
Note	In the case of an incipit, indicates whether the incipit as given is defective, i.e. the first words of the text as preserved, as opposed to the first words of the work itself. In the case of an explicit, indicates whether the explicit as given is defective, i.e. the final words of the text as preserved, as opposed to what the closing words would have been had the text of the work been whole.

9.3.35. att.naming

att.naming provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.6.1. Referring Strings 13.3.6. Names and Nyms]	
Module	tei
Members	att.personal[name orgName persName roleName] country editor pubPlace rs settlement
Attributes	Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref) role — may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace nymRef — (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace **Note** The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by

	whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

9.3.36. att.notated

att.notated provides attributes to indicate any specialised notation used for element content.	
Module	tei
Members	c cl m phr quote s seg w
Attributes	Attributes notation — names the notation used for the content of the element. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated

9.3.37. att.personal

att.personal (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	tei
Members	name orgName persName roleName
Attributes	Attributes att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) full — indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Legal values are:** **yes** (yes) the name component is spelled out in full.[Default]; **abb** (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.; **init** (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial. sort — (sort) specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.count

9.3.38. att.placement

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions 11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]	
Module	tei
Members	add metamark note noteGrp
Attributes	Attributes place — specifies where this item is placed. **Status** Recommended **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace **Suggested values include:** **top** at the top of the page

bottom at the foot of the page

margin in the margin (left, right, or both)

opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page

overleaf on the other side of the leaf

above above the line

right to the right, e.g. to the right of a vertical line of text, or to the right of a figure

below below the line

left to the left, e.g. to the left of a vertical line of text, or to the left of a figure

end at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.

inline within the body of the text.

inspace in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

```
<add place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</add>
<add place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the
 foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>
```

```
<note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>
```

9.3.39. att.pointing

att.pointing provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]

Module	tei
Members	licence note noteGrp ptr ref span term
Attributes	Attributes

targetLang — specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by *target*, using a ‘language tag’ generated according to BCP 47.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.language

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"> <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

```
<linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">
 <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"
  target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"
  type="tuv"
  targetLang="pl"/>
 <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"
  target="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"
  type="tuv"
  targetLang="sw"/>
</linkGrp>
```

		In the example above, the `<linkGrp>` combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.
		Note The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their IETFInternet Engineering Task Force definitions.
	target	specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space **Note** One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.
	evaluate	(evaluate) specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Legal values are:** **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer. **one** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer. **none** no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target. **Note** If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

9.3.40. att.ranging

att.ranging provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.	
Module	tei
Members	att.dimensions[add date del gap restore subst]
Attributes	Attributes
	atLeast gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.numeric
	atMost gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.numeric

	min	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.numeric
	max	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.numeric
	confidence	specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by *min* and *max*, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.probability

Example		`The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <del rend="overstrike">`
		`<gap reason="illegible"`
		`extent="one or two letters" atLeast="1" atMost="2" unit="chars"/>`
		`</del> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.`

9.3.41. att.resourced

att.resourced provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.	
Module	tei
Members	graphic
Attributes	Attributes url (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained. **Status** Required **Datatype** teidata.pointer

9.3.42. att.segLike

att.segLike provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]	
Module	tei
Members	c cl m pc phr s seg w
Attributes	Attributes att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat) att.fragmentable (@part) function (function) characterizes the function of the segment. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Note** Attribute values will often vary depending on the type of element to which they are attached. For example, a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be implemented by a project-defined customization.

9.3.43. att.sortable

att.sortable provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure]	
Module	tei
Members	correspAction idno listOrg listPerson listWit org person term witness
Attributes	Attributes

	sortKey	supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.word `David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen <index indexName="NAMES"> <term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term> </index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first cousin.` **Note** The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for *4-H* will often appear alphabetized under 'fourh', and *McCoy* may be alphabetized under 'maccoy', while *A1*, *A4*, and *A5* may all appear in numeric order 'alphabetized' between 'a-' and 'AA'. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.

9.3.44. att.spanning

att.spanning provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions 1.3.1. Attribute Classes]	
Module	tei
Members	lb metamark pb
Attributes	Attributes spanTo indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.pointer **Schematron** The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element <sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]"> <sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]">The element indicated by @spanTo (<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>) must follow the current element <sch:name/> </sch:assert> </sch:rule>
Note	The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the *spanTo* attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself.

9.3.45. att.textCritical

att.textCritical defines a set of attributes common to all elements representing variant readings in text critical work. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	
Module	textcrit
Members	lem rdg
Attributes	Attributes att.written (@hand) att.typed (type, @subtype) type classifies the reading according to some useful typology. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated

		Sample values include:	**substantive** (substantive) the reading offers a substantive variant. **orthographic** (orthographic) the reading differs only orthographically, not in substance, from other readings.
	cause	classifies the cause for the variant reading, according to any appropriate typology of possible origins.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.enumerated
		Sample values include:	**homeoteleuton** **homeoarchy** **paleographic** **Confusion** **haplography** **dittography** **falseEmendation**
	varSeq	(variant sequence) provides a number indicating the position of this reading in a sequence, when there is reason to presume a sequence to the variants.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	teidata.count
		Note	Different variant sequences could be coded with distinct number trails: 1-2-3 for one sequence, 5-6-7 for another. More complex variant sequences, with (for example) multiple branchings from single readings, may be expressed through the `<join>` element.
	require	points to other readings that are required when adopting the current reading or lemma.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space
Note	This element class defines attributes inherited by <rdg>, <lem>, and `<rdgGrp>`.		

9.3.46. att.timed

att.timed provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. [8.3.5. Temporal Information]

Module	tei

Members	gap
Attributes	Attributes start — indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.pointer **Note** If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the immediately preceding element at the same hierarchic level. end — indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.pointer **Note** If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the immediately following element at the same hierarchic level.

9.3.47. att.transcriptional

att.transcriptional provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]	
Module	tei
Members	add del restore subst
Attributes	Attributes att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.written (@hand) status — indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.enumerated **Sample values include:** **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact. **duplicate-partial** part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original **excessStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted. **excessEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted. **short-Start** some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be. **short-End** some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

		partial some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be. **unremarkable** the deletion is not faulty.[Default]
	Note	Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common. Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.
cause	documents the presumed cause for the intervention.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.enumerated
seq	(sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.count

9.3.48. att.typed

att.typed provides attributes that can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes 17.1.1. Words and Above 3.6.1. Referring Strings 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions 3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 7.2.5. Speech Contents 4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions 4.1.2. Numbered Divisions 4.2.1. Headings and Trailers 4.4. Virtual Divisions 13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work 16.1.1. Pointers and Links 16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 12.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text 22.5.1.2. Defining Content Models: RELAX NG 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts 23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists]

Module	tei
Members	att.interpLike[interp interpGrp span spanGrp] TEI ab accMat add app c change cl corresPAction corrospDesc country date del div idno lb listOrg listPerson m name note noteGrp org orgName pb pc persName phr ptr quote ref restore roleName rs s seg settlement stamp surface surfaceGrp term text title w
Attributes	Attributes

type	characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	teidata.enumerated

```
<div type="verse">
 <head>Night in Tarras</head>
 <lg type="stanza">
  <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l>
  <l>…</l>
 </lg>
 <lg type="stanza">
  <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l>
  <l>…</l>
 </lg>
</div>
```

	Note	The *type* attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.
subtype	(subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed	
	Status	Optional

	Datatype teidata.enumerated **Note** The *subtype* attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its *type* attribute.
Schematron	<sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule>
Note	When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the `<valList>` element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists .

9.3.49. att.witnessed

att.witnessed provides attributes used to identify the witnesses supporting a particular reading in a critical apparatus. [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses]	
Module	textcrit
Members	lem rdg
Attributes	Attributes wit (witness or witnesses) contains a space-delimited list of one or more pointers indicating the witnesses which attest to a given reading. **Status** Optional **Datatype** 1–# occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by white-space **Note** If the apparatus contains readings only for a single witness, this attribute may be consistently omitted. This attribute may occur both within an apparatus gathering variant readings in the transcription of an individual witness and within an apparatus gathering readings from different witnesses. Additional descriptions or alternative versions of the sigla referenced may be supplied as the content of a child `<wit>` element.

9.3.50. att.written

att.written provides attributes to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]	
Module	tei
Members	att.textCritical[lem rdg] att.transcriptional[add del restore subst] ab div hi note noteGrp p seg text
Attributes	Attributes hand points to a <handNote> element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned. **Status** Optional **Datatype** teidata.pointer

9.4. Macros

9.4.1. macro.paraContent

macro.paraContent (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	ab add del hi p ref restore seg title
Content model	`<content>`

	<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.inter"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> <elementRef key="lg"/> <classRef key="model.lLike"/> </alternate> </content>
Declaration	macro.paraContent = (text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global | lg | model.lLike)*

9.4.2. macro.phraseSeq

macro.phraseSeq (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]	
Module	tei
Used by	cl country editor name objectType orgName persName phr pubPlace publisher roleName rs s settlement stamp street term
Content model	<content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.attributable"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content>
Declaration	macro.phraseSeq = (text | model.gLike | model.attributable | model.phrase | model.global)*

9.4.3. macro.phraseSeq.limited

macro.phraseSeq.limited (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]	
Module	tei
Used by	classCode language span
Content model	<content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content>
Declaration	macro.phraseSeq.limited = (text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global)*

9.4.4. macro.specialPara

macro.specialPara ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei
Used by	accMat change handNote licence metamark note q quote
Content model	<content>

	<content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.inter"/> <classRef key="model.divPart"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content>
Declaration	macro.specialPara = (text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.divPart | model.global)*

9.4.5. macro.xtext

macro.xtext (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.	
Module	tei
Used by	c
Content model	<content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> </alternate> </content>
Declaration	macro.xtext = (text | model.gLike)*

9.5. Datatypes

9.5.1. teidata.certainty

teidata.certainty defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.	
Module	tei
Used by	teidata.probCert
Content model	<content> <valList type="closed"> <valItem ident="high"/> <valItem ident="medium"/> <valItem ident="low"/> <valItem ident="unknown"/> </valList> </content>
Declaration	teidata.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"
Note	Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter.

9.5.2. teidata.count

teidata.count defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<content> <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/> </content>
Declaration	teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger

Note	Any positive integer value or zero is permitted

9.5.3. teidata.duration.iso

teidata.duration.iso defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	`<content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/> </content>`
Declaration	`teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" }`
Example	`<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>`
Example	`<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>`
Example	`<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>`
Example	`<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>`
Note	A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either `.` or `,` as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is *0*, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator `T` must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair. For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*.

9.5.4. teidata.duration.w3c

teidata.duration.w3c defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	`<content> <dataRef name="duration"/> </content>`
Declaration	`teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration`
Example	`<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>`
Example	`<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>`
Example	`<date dur="P7D">a week</date>`
Example	`<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>`
Note	A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the `S` number, which may have a decimal component (using `.` as the decimal point). If any number is *0*, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator `T` must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair. For complete details, see the W3C specification.

9.5.5. teidata.enumerated

teidata.enumerated defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.	
Module	tei

Used by	Element: • app/@type • availability/@status • correspAction/@type • gap/@reason • gap/@agent • idno/@type • interp/@type • interpGrp/@type • org/@role • pc/@force • pc/@unit • person/@role • person/@age • q/@type • span/@type • spanGrp/@type • surface/@attachment • title/@type • title/@level • variantEncoding/@method • variantEncoding/@location

Content model	`<content>`
	` <dataRef key="teidata.word"/>`
	`</content>`

Declaration	`teidata.enumerated = teidata.word`
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace. Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a `<valList>` element.

9.5.6. teidata.language

teidata.language defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification]

Module	tei
Used by	Element: • language/@ident

Content model	`<content>`
	` <alternate>`
	`  <dataRef name="language"/>`
	`  <valList>`
	`  <valItem ident=""/>`
	`  </valList>`
	` </alternate>`
	`</content>`

Declaration	`teidata.language = xsd:language | ( "" )`
Note	The values for this attribute are language ‘tags’ as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.

A ‘language tag’, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or *subtags* separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

language
: The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

script
: The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

region
: Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm.

variant
: An IANA-registered variation. These codes are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags.

extension
: An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.

private use
: An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter *x* (i.e., starts with `x-`) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been ‘grandfathered’ from previous specifications.

Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with `x-`, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header.

Examples include

sn
: Shona

zh-TW
: Taiwanese

zh-Hant-HK
: Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong

en-SL
: English as spoken in Sierra Leone

pl
: Polish

es-MX
: Spanish as spoken in Mexico

es-419
: Spanish as spoken in Latin America

	The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.

9.5.7. teidata.name

teidata.name defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	`<content> <dataRef name="Name"/> </content>`
Declaration	`teidata.name = xsd:Name`
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

9.5.8. teidata.numeric

teidata.numeric defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	`<content> <alternate> <dataRef name="double"/> <dataRef name="token" restriction="(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)"/> <dataRef name="decimal"/> </alternate> </content>`
Declaration	`teidata.numeric = xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal`
Note	Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio. To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, 'E notation', a variant of 'exponential notation', may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3. A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

9.5.9. teidata.outputMeasurement

teidata.outputMeasurement defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	`<content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"/> </content>`
Declaration	`teidata.outputMeasurement = token { pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)" }`
Example	`<figure> <head>The TEI Logo</head> <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters <mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in`

	between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneath, all on a white background.</figDesc> <graphic height="600px" width="600px" url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/> </figure>
Note	These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

9.5.10. teidata.pattern

teidata.pattern defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<content> <dataRef name="token"/> </content>
Declaration	teidata.pattern = token
Note	A regular expression, often called a *pattern*, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings *Handel*, *Händel*, and *Haendel* can be described by the pattern `H(ä|ae?)ndel` (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern `H(ä|ae?)ndel` *matches* each of the three strings) Wikipedia This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema.

9.5.11. teidata.point

teidata.point defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)"/> </content>
Declaration	teidata.point = token { pattern = "(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)" }
Example	<facsimile> <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="400" lry="280"> <zone points="220,100 300,210 170,250 123,234"> <graphic url="handwriting.png "/> </zone> </surface> </facsimile>
Note	A point is defined by two numeric values, which should be expressed as decimal numbers. Neither number can end in a decimal point. E.g., both 0.0,84.2 and 0,84 are allowed, but 0.,84. is not.

9.5.12. teidata.pointer

teidata.pointer defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.	
Module	tei
Used by	Element: • app/@from • app/@to • change/@target • classCode/@scheme

	• keywords/@scheme • metamark/@target • span/@from • span/@to
Content model	`<content> <dataRef name="anyURI"/> </content>`
Declaration	`teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI`
Note	The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 *Internationalized Resource Identifiers* (IRIs) mapping to URIs. For example, `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%` is encoded as `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25` while `http://-mr----nx.mirbg4--n✱###.#########-#####.####/` is encoded as `http://ckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/`

9.5.13. teidata.probCert

teidata.probCert defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	`<content> <alternate> <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/> <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/> </alternate> </content>`
Declaration	`teidata.probCert = teidata.probability | teidata.certainty`

9.5.14. teidata.probability

teidata.probability defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.	
Module	tei
Used by	teidata.probCert
Content model	`<content> <dataRef name="double"/> </content>`
Declaration	`teidata.probability = xsd:double`
Note	Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing *certainly false* and 1 representing *certainly true*.

9.5.15. teidata.replacement

teidata.replacement defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	`<content> <textNode/> </content>`
Declaration	`teidata.replacement = text`

9.5.16. teidata.sex

teidata.sex defines the range of attribute values used to identify human or animal sex.

Module	tei
Used by	Element: • person/@sex
Content model	<content> <dataRef key="teidata.word"/> </content>
Declaration	teidata.sex = teidata.word
Note	Values for attributes using this datatype may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes* http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People* http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection.

9.5.17. teidata.temporal.iso

teidata.temporal.iso defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*.

Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<content> <alternate> <dataRef name="date"/> <dataRef name="gYear"/> <dataRef name="gMonth"/> <dataRef name="gDay"/> <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/> <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/> <dataRef name="time"/> <dataRef name="dateTime"/> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/> </alternate> </content>
Declaration	teidata.temporal.iso = xsd:date | xsd:gYear | xsd:gMonth | xsd:gDay | xsd:gYearMonth | xsd:gMonthDay | xsd:time | xsd:dateTime | token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" }
Note	If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used. For all representations for which ISO 8601 describes both a *basic* and an *extended* format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format. While ISO 8601 permits the use of both `00:00` and `24:00` to represent midnight, these Guidelines strongly recommend against the use of `24:00`.

9.5.18. teidata.temporal.w3c

teidata.temporal.w3c defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification.

Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<content> <alternate> <dataRef name="date"/> <dataRef name="gYear"/>

	<dataRef name="gMonth"/> <dataRef name="gDay"/> <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/> <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/> <dataRef name="time"/> <dataRef name="dateTime"/> </alternate> </content>
Declaration	teidata.temporal.w3c = xsd:date | xsd:gYear | xsd:gMonth | xsd:gDay | xsd:gYearMonth | xsd:gMonthDay | xsd:time | xsd:dateTime
Note	If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.

9.5.19. teidata.text

teidata.text defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<content> <dataRef name="string"/> </content>
Declaration	teidata.text = string
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘token’ in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

9.5.20. teidata.truthValue

teidata.truthValue defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.	
Module	tei
Used by	Element: • pc/@pre • surface/@flipping
Content model	<content> <dataRef name="boolean"/> </content>
Declaration	teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean
Note	The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false. This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: teidata.xTruthValue.

9.5.21. teidata.version

teidata.version defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.	
Module	tei
Used by	Element: • TEI/@version
Content model	<content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}"/> </content>

Declaration	`teidata.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }`
Note	The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (http://unicode.org/versions/). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

9.5.22. teidata.versionNumber

teidata.versionNumber defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	`<content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}"/> </content>`
Declaration	`teidata.versionNumber = token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }`

9.5.23. teidata.word

teidata.word defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.	
Module	tei
Used by	teidata.enumerated teidata.sexElement: • app/@loc • m/@baseForm • metamark/@function
Content model	`<content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+"/> </content>`
Declaration	`teidata.word = token { pattern = "[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+" }`
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

9.5.24. teidata.xTruthValue

teidata.xTruthValue (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.	
Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	`<content> <alternate> <dataRef name="boolean"/> <valList> <valItem ident="unknown"/> <valItem ident="inapplicable"/> </valList> </alternate> </content>`
Declaration	`teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean | ( "unknown" | "inapplicable" )`
Note	In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype teidata.TruthValue.

9.5.25. teidata.xpath

teidata.xpath defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression.

Module	tei
Used by	
Content model	<content> <textNode/> </content>
Declaration	teidata.xpath = text
Note	Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in 6.2.. When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the article at OWASP.